A Grammar of the Seneca Language

Wallace Chafe
A Grammar of the Seneca Language
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

Wallace Chafe

with the help and collaboration of

In Memory of Alberta Austin
# CONTENTS

Acknowledgments xiii  
Tables xiv  
Abbreviations xv

1. Introduction 1  
2. Phonetics and Phonology 7  
   2.1. Introduction 7  
   2.2. Seneca vowels today 8  
   2.3. Seneca consonants today 9  
   2.4. Vowels and consonants reconstructed for Proto-Northern-Iroquoian 11  
   2.5. Reconstructed Seneca at an earlier time 11  
   2.6. The assignment of vowel length in modern Seneca 12  
      2.6.1. Vowel length in an even-numbered penult 12  
      2.6.2. Vowel length in an odd-numbered penult 12  
      2.6.3. Vowel length from other sources 13  
   2.7. The assignment of accent in modern Seneca 13  
      2.7.1. Accenting of an even-numbered short vowel 14  
      2.7.2. Accenting of an even-numbered short vowel when the following odd-numbered vowel conformed to 2.7.1. 14  
      2.7.3. Words with multiple accents 14  
      2.7.4. Words with no accent 15  
      2.7.5. The absence of accent on initial and final vowels 15  
      2.7.6. Accent spreading 15  
      2.7.7. Three definitions of ‘closed syllable’ 15  
   2.8. Phonological changes shared with all the Northern Iroquoian languages 15  
   2.9. Phonological changes not shared with all the Northern Iroquoian languages 17  
   2.10. Phonological changes still in progress and applying only to casual speech 22  
   3.1. Introduction 23  
   3.2. The habitual and stative aspect suffixes 24  
      3.2.1. Meanings of the habitual and stative suffixes 24  
         3.2.1.1. Nonconsequential events 24  
         3.2.1.2. Consequential events 25  
      3.2.2. Stative-only verb roots 26  
   3.2.3. Forms of the habitual and stative suffixes 26  
   3.3. The punctual aspect suffix and the modal prefixes 27  
      3.3.1. Introduction 27  
      3.3.2. Meanings of the modal prefixes 27  
         3.3.2.1. The factual prefix 28  
         3.3.2.2. The future prefix 28  
         3.3.2.3. The hypothetical prefix 28  
      3.3.3. Forms of the punctual aspect suffix 28  
      3.3.4. Forms of the modal prefixes 29  
         3.3.4.1. Forms of the factual prefix 29  
         3.3.4.2. Forms of the future prefix 30
7.4.1. The neuter prefixes 89
7.4.2. Alienable possession 89
7.4.3. Inalienable possession 89
7.4.4. Nouns that lack a pronominal prefix 90
7.5. Prepronominal prefixes with nouns 91
7.5.1. The repetitive prefix with nouns 91
7.5.2. The cislocative prefix with nouns 91
7.5.3. The partitive prefix with nouns 91
7.5.4. The coincident prefix with nouns 91
7.5.5. The negative prefix with nouns 91
7.6. Nominalized verb bases 92
7.6.1. The nominalizing suffix *-hshr-/*-′shr- 92
7.6.2. The nominalizing suffix *-′t- 93
7.7. The proper nominalizer *-′ 93
8. Clitics 94
8.1. Introduction 94
8.2. The augmentative 94
8.3. The diminutive 95
8.4. The characterizer 95
8.5. The populative 96
8.6. The decessive 96
8.7. The directional 96
8.8. The nominal distributive 97
8.9. The intensifier 98
8.10. The nativizer 98
8.11. Clitic sequences 98
9. Kinship Terms 100
9.1. Introduction 100
9.2. Relatives in general 100
9.3. Relatives of the same generation 101
9.3.1. Twins 101
9.3.2. Siblings 101
9.3.3. Cousins 103
9.4. Relatives one generation apart 103
9.4.1. Parents and children 103
9.4.2. Sons and daughters 104
9.4.3. Mother 104
9.4.4. Father 104
9.4.5. Aunts and uncles 105
9.4.6. Nieces and nephews 105
9.5. Grandparents and grandchildren 106
9.6. Great-grandparents and great-grandchildren 107
9.7. Relatives by marriage 107
9.7.1. Spouse 107
9.7.2. Siblings-in-law 108
9.7.3. Parents-in-law 108
9.9. Relatives by adoption 109
9.10. Ritual friendship 110
9.11. Casual friendship 110

x
10.1. Introduction 112
10.2. First and second person pronouns 112
10.2.1. The first person independent pronoun i:' 112
10.2.1.1. First person plus neh in ni:' 112
10.2.1.2. First person plus -ah in i:'ah 114
10.2.1.3. First person plus neh and -ah in ni:'ah 114
10.2.2. The second person independent pronoun i:s 115
10.2.2.1. Second person plus neh in ni:s 115
10.2.2.2. Second person plus diminutive -'ah in i:s'ah 115
10.2.2.3. Second person plus neh and -'ah in ni:s'ah 116
10.3. The noun root *-öhw- ‘self’ 116
10.3.1. The stem *-öhwą’kehah ‘oneself alone’ 117
10.4. Indefinite pronouns 117
10.4.1. sö:ga:’ ‘someone, anyone’ 118
10.4.1.1. de’sö:ga:’ ‘no one’ 118
10.4.2. ha’gwisdë’ or gwisdë’ ‘something’ 118
10.4.2.1. da’ágwisdë’ or da’gwísdë’ ‘nothing’ 118
10.4.3. na’ahđë’eh ‘things’ 119
10.4.4. gye:h ‘some’ 119
10.5. Demonstrative pronouns 119
10.5.1. në:gë:h ‘this’ and hi:gë:h ‘that’ 119
10.5.2. The particle i:gë:h 121
10.5.3. nê:dah ‘this here’ and nê:ne’ ‘that there’ 121
10.5.4. ne’hoh ‘that or there’ 122
10.5.4.1. Distal location in discourse 122
10.5.4.2. Distal location in space 122
10.5.4.3. Appositional demonstrative ne’hoh 123
10.6. The particle neh ‘namely’ 123
10.6.1. Amplification with a noun 123
10.6.2. Amplification with a verb 124
10.6.3. The particle sequence ne:’ neh 125
11. Syntax Part 2. Amplifying a spatial, temporal, or modal meaning 127
11.1. Introduction 127
11.2. Location in space 127
11.3. Location in time 128
11.4. Epistemic orientation 134
11.5. Orientation in degree 137
12. Syntax Part 3. Amplifying the meaning of an entire verb 141
12.1. Introduction 141
12.2. Spatial subordination 141
12.3. Temporal subordination 142
12.4. Manner subordination 143
12.5. Purposive subordination 143
12.6. Attributing speech 144
12.7. Attributing thought 145
14. Syntax Part 5. Coordination 149
14.1. Introduction 149
14.2. Simple juxtaposition 149
14.3. koh ‘and’ 149
ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

I am grateful to numerous people without whom this work could never have taken shape. Above all it has depended on the knowledge generously shared by the speakers of the Seneca language who are listed on the title page. Gë’ heh nya:wëh. Like all Iroquoian linguists I owe a huge debt to the late Floyd Lounsbury, whose description of Oneida verb morphology has been the bible for all linguists who work within this fascinating language family. He introduced me to Seneca in the first place, and continued to support what I was doing in a variety of ways. I also owe a great deal to continuing discussions with Clifford Abbott, Michael Foster, Karin Michelson, Marianne Mithun, and Hanni Woodbury, the best group of colleagues one could possibly imagine. Karin went over this work in meticulous detail and saved me from numerous errors, big and small. The same can be said of an anonymous reviewer whose careful reading made a big difference. I tried to heed their advice and apologize if there remain a few places where I didn’t. Thanks also go to the late William Fenton, who generously shared his knowledge of Seneca culture and history and provided support for my early years of fieldwork.

Wallace Chafe
Santa Barbara, California
March 2014
TABLES

CHAPTER 2. Phonetics and Phonology
   Table 2.1. Seneca vowels 8
   Table 2.2. Seneca consonants 10
   Table 2.3. The vowels of Proto-Northern-Iroquoian 11
   Table 2.4. The consonants of Proto-Northern-Iroquoian 11

   Table 3.1. Pronominal prefixes (reconstructed forms): 31

CHAPTER 4. Verb Morphology Part 2: The Prepronominal Prefixes
   Table 4.1. Prepronominal prefixes without modal prefixes (reconstructed forms) 37
   Table 4.2. Prepronominal and modal prefix combinations (reconstructed forms) 38

   Table 10.1. Inflections of the noun root *-öhw- ‘self’ 116
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Abbreviation</th>
<th>Meaning</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>first person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>second person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>third person</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AGT</td>
<td>agent</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AND</td>
<td>andative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AUG</td>
<td>augmentative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>BEN</td>
<td>benefactive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CAUS</td>
<td>causative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CHAR</td>
<td>characterizer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CIS</td>
<td>cislocative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>COIN</td>
<td>coincident</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONT</td>
<td>continuative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>CONTR</td>
<td>contrastive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DEC</td>
<td>decessive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIM</td>
<td>diminutive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIR</td>
<td>directive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DIST</td>
<td>distributive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DU</td>
<td>dual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>DUP</td>
<td>duplicative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVEN</td>
<td>eventuative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EX</td>
<td>exclusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXT.LOC</td>
<td>external locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>F</td>
<td>feminine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FAC</td>
<td>factual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FUT</td>
<td>future</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HAB</td>
<td>habitual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>HYP</td>
<td>hypothetical</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>IN</td>
<td>inclusive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INCH</td>
<td>inchoative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INST</td>
<td>instrumental</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>INT.LOC</td>
<td>internal locative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>LK</td>
<td>linking vowel</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>M</td>
<td>masculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MID</td>
<td>middle</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>N</td>
<td>neuter</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NDIST</td>
<td>nominal distributive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NEG</td>
<td>negative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NOM</td>
<td>nominalizer</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NONM</td>
<td>nonmasculine</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSF</td>
<td>simple noun suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PART</td>
<td>partitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PAT</td>
<td>patient</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>POP</td>
<td>populative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROG</td>
<td>progressive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PROP</td>
<td>proper name</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PUN</td>
<td>punctual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PURP</td>
<td>purposive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REFL</td>
<td>reflexive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>REP</td>
<td>repetitive</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SG</td>
<td>singular</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>STA</td>
<td>stative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>TRANS</td>
<td>translocative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1. INTRODUCTION

Seneca is a member of the Northern Iroquoian branch of the Iroquoian language family, as outlined in Figure 1.1. Other languages of this family were spoken before the European invasion, but we know of them largely through references in missionary records (e.g., Thwaites 1896-1901).

![Figure 1.1. Branches of the Iroquoian Language Family](image)

By the beginning of the 21st century the Seneca language was spoken fluently by no more than a few dozen individuals on three Seneca reservations (or ‘territories’) in western New York State. Two of these reservations, Cattaraugus and Allegany, are governed by a political body known as the Seneca Nation of Indians. The third, Tonawanda, is governed by a council of chiefs.

The origin of the name Seneca is obscure, but in the early 17th century a name spelled variously as Sinnekens, Sineques, and Senecas was applied to four of the five nations of the Iroquois Confederacy, specifically those who lived west of the Mohawks: the Oneidas, Onondagas, Cayugas, and Senecas. The fifth nation, the Mohawks, were the immediate neighbors of the Dutch at Fort Orange (later Albany), where they were called Maquas. The nations that were included under the name Sinnekens and its variants gradually contracted as the Dutch became acquainted with the Oneidas, Onondagas, and Cayugas, until the name was finally limited to the westernmost nation, the Senecas (see the discussion in Ives Goddard 1978).

French missionaries and explorers, who were the first Europeans to have direct contact with the Senecas in the seventeenth century, referred to them with some variant of the name Tsonmontouan, evidently a Huron name referring to a big hill. The Seneca name for themselves is Onödowa’ga:’, or ‘those of the big hill’. The similar name of another Iroquois nation, the Onondagas, means ‘at the hill’, but the hill was a different one.
The earliest known written record of the Seneca language was apparently compiled by the French Jesuit missionary Julien Garnier (1642-1730). Garnier left France for Canada in 1662, and in 1671 he traveled to Seneca country in what is now the western part of New York State. He was forced to leave the Senecas in 1683 when hostilities arose between them and the French, but he was able to return in 1701 and he remained among the Senecas until 1709, when further hostilities forced him to leave for good.

Garnier produced two dictionaries, one of them French-Tsonnontouan and the other Tsonnontouan-French. They languished unnoticed for three centuries, until they were discovered by Michael McCafferty near the turn of the 21st century in a Jesuit archive at St. Jérôme, Québec. Subsequently the entire St. Jérôme archive, including Garnier’s dictionaries, was transferred to Montréal, where it is now kept in the Archive of the Jesuits in Canada. Little attention was paid to these dictionaries following Garnier’s death. They exhibit extensive water damage, and many pages are partially or wholly illegible while some were partially destroyed. Figure 1.2 shows the title page of the Tsonnontouan-French dictionary.

A comparison of Garnier’s dictionaries with Seneca writings from the early 19th century shows that the intervening 18th century was a time of extensive phonological change, so extensive that Seneca speakers from 1700 and Seneca speakers today would have had difficulty understanding one another.

Figure 1.2. The title page of the Tsonnontouan-French dictionary

During the latter half of the 17th century the Seneca language appears to have been influenced by contact with speakers of Huron (or Wendat), which was spoken earlier in various communities south of Georgian Bay. In 1649 the Hurons were overrun by warriors from the Five Nations and the survivors scattered in several directions. A number of them found refuge among the Senecas, where they were eventually
assimilated. Garnier lived and worked in one or more communities with significant Huron populations, and his dictionaries show evidence of Huron influence.

Written records of Seneca from most of the following 18th century are almost entirely lacking but, as mentioned above, it was a period during which the language underwent a large number of phonological changes. The 19th century, in contrast, saw much valuable linguistic work accomplished by the protestant missionary Asher Wright and others, first at the Buffalo Creek Reservation beginning in 1831 and then, after the sale of the Buffalo Creek land, on the Cattaraugus Reservation from 1836 until Wright’s death in 1875.

Of linguistic interest is the fact that Wright recognized the glottal stop, a ubiquitous Seneca consonant that had been ignored by the Jesuits. He wrote it as an h with a line across the upper portion: ħ. ‘This sound is very abundant in Seneca,’ he wrote, ‘and, used in conjunction with certain other modifications, the mode and time of verbs, and various other circumstances are denoted by it. No one can read or write Seneca intelligibly, who does not pay the strictest attention to this character, and avoid confounding it with the rough aspirate of the common h.’

Between 1841 and 1850 the Cattaraugus mission published a periodical titled *Ne Jagó’nigóëgësgwatha’,* or in English ‘The Mental Elevator’, literally ‘it’s used to raise the mind’ (Figure 1.4). A work titled *A Spelling Book in the Seneca Language: with English Definitions* was published in 1842. Wright’s wife Laura, who was also an accomplished linguist, described it as follows:

This work is still unfinished. These sheets contain the definitions of several hundred Seneca words and a tolerably complete explanation of the grammatical principles of the language, except the verb. In respect to the verb no complete analysis has yet been effected nor is there much reason to expect the accomplishment of this object until some competent Seneca scholar shall have become a universal grammarian.
Laura Wright, 1809-1886

The insights captured in this work are well illustrated in the following quote, which describes a derivational suffix that linguists still term the distributive (with spellings changed to conform to the conventions followed in the present work).

The idea of distribution is commonly expressed by changes in the principle word; generally by suffixes … as by the suffix “-šò”, … deyéghënhëšò “the tears are dropping one after another from her eyes”. Sometimes the suffix “-nyö” is added to “-šò”, either to give greater intensity to the meaning, or to extend it to many similar cases, one after another; as, … deyéghënhëshëšonyö “the tears are dropping profusely one after another from her eyes; or, the tears are dropping, one after another from the eyes of many persons, separately considered (Wright 1842: 99-101).

It would be difficult to improve on this description today. One can only regret that the remarkably sophisticated linguistic work of Asher and Laura Wright failed to be carried further after they passed away.

John Napoleon Brinton Hewitt, 1858-1937

Later in the 19th century important work on several of the Northern Iroquoian languages, including Seneca, was performed by John Napoleon Brinton Hewitt (Merriam 2010). Hewitt’s mother was part Tuscarora, and he is said to have learned that language from schoolmates. In 1880 he was hired as an assistant by Erminnie Smith of the Smithsonian Institution, and after her death in 1886 he secured employment with the Smithsonian, where he remained until his own death in 1937. He put great effort into compiling material for a Tuscarora dictionary, which was recently edited and published by Blair Rudes (1999). Toward the end of the 19th century Hewitt collected various versions of what he called ‘Iroquoian Cosmology’ in Onondaga, Seneca, and Mohawk, which were published in 1903 and 1928.
Hewitt had ‘a good ear’, and his transcriptions of the cosmology texts are remarkably accurate. The following is the beginning of the Seneca cosmology that was recorded from John Armstrong on the Cattaraugus Reservation in 1896. Hewitt’s free translation, intended to adhere as closely as possible to the meaning of the Seneca, is presented first. Below it is Hewitt’s transcription of the Seneca, where his abundant use of diacritics is evident. On the bottom is the spelling system that is followed in the present work.

There were, it seems, so it is said, man-beings dwelling on the other side of the sky.

Neٔ gwā’, giٔ’on’, hadi’noŋge’ neٔ’ sgāoŋ’iädi’ ne’ hēnoŋgwe’.

Ne:’ gwa:h gyö’oh hadinöge’ neh sgēöyadih neh hēno:geh.


The present author was encouraged by Floyd Lounsbury to begin work with the Seneca language in the summer of 1956. He worked on the Cattaraugus Reservation in 1956 and 1957 with Roy Jimerson, LeRoy Button, and Solon Jones; on the Allegany Reservation in 1958 with Ed Curry, Albert Jones, and others; and on the Tonawanda Reservation in 1959 with Corbett Sundown, Betsy Carpenter, and others. Since then he has been in contact with various individuals on all three reservations, working extensively with Alberta Austin at Cattaraugus in the early 1990s, and thereafter with Myrtle Peterson at Allegany. Sandy Dowdy at Allegany has been a constant friend and invaluable source of knowledge and support.

A comprehensive list of publications on the Seneca language is included in the References at the end of this work. In progress are a digitized English-Seneca dictionary, a Seneca-English dictionary of bases, and an expanded collection of Seneca texts.

Every language contributes in its own way to our understanding of the human mind, showing us the varied ways the mind has invented to cope with and adjust to its surroundings. All the Northern Iroquoian languages exhibit a strong verb-centeredness that was captured by Jean André Cuq, a 19th century missionary to the Mohawks, who wrote of their language:

They don’t have articles, and they wouldn’t know how to compensate for this lack of articles either with case or with prepositions, which they also lack. Nevertheless, they have other ways of establishing and maintaining clarity of discourse. ... They have only a few adverbs and conjunctions, but in fact they have an astonishing wealth of verbs. In their language almost everything is a verb, or can become one (Cuq 1866: 87).

Of special interest is the fact that the words of these languages express not only ideas of events and states, as is the case with the verbs of many languages, but include within a single word the participant(s) in those events and states.
It appears to be universally true that we cannot think of a particular event or state without including the idea of one or more of the participants in it. As noted by T. Givón, ‘a verb-coded event … cannot be experienced—makes no sense—indepedently of its noun-coded participants’ (Givón 2001: 53). Ronald Langacker remarked that ‘an event is conceptually dependent; it cannot be conceptualized without conceptualizing the participants who interact to constitute it’ (Langacker 2008: 1004). Similarly, William Croft observed that ‘one cannot conceive of an action such as running without the involvement of a runner, or of a property such as height without something that is tall’ (Croft 2001: 87). In short, ideas of events and states almost always include within them ideas of people, objects, or abstractions that initiate, are affected by, or otherwise participate in them.

The Northern Iroquoian languages capture this requirement directly by packaging an event or state and its participants within a single word. The present work describes the way Seneca does that, and also how it includes within that same package a variety of other features that might in other languages be assigned to separate words. It is in many respects a prototypical polysynthetic or holophrastic language (Duponceau 1838, Lieber 1837).

All the Northern Iroquoian languages have undergone phonological changes that distinguish them from each other, but Seneca has been exuberant in its accumulation of such changes, and they have obscured the morphological structure of the language to a considerable degree. Because of that, it is necessary to base discussions of Seneca morphology on reconstructed forms in which the parts of words can be more easily identified. Such reconstructions are provided throughout this work.

One can hardly present a work of this kind without feeling humility. Edward Sapir once remarked that ‘all grammars leak’, and I think he had more in mind than inadvertent errors and omissions. A grammar is at best a limited attempt to document the many complexities that have arisen in the speech of countless people who have inherited ways of thinking and speaking from countless generations before them, a process with no fixed beginning in which nothing has ever stood still. These pages try to suggest at least some of that with respect to the language before us.

A language possesses extraordinary aesthetic value. I hope that some of the beauty of this remarkable language will be evident here. My own contact with it has been an enriching experience for which I will always be grateful.
2. PHONETICS AND PHONOLOGY

2.1. Introduction

Seneca is not only highly polysynthetic but also highly fusional. Numerous phonological changes, many of which evidently took place during the 18th century, obscured the boundaries of word-internal elements and thus obscured the structure of Seneca words. However, evidence that is internal to Seneca itself (Chafe 1959a), comparative evidence from related languages, and certain written materials permit the reconstruction of earlier stages of the language at a time when its morphology was more transparent and more tractable to analysis.

Modern forms of the language cannot be explained adequately without reference to such reconstructions and the changes that led to the language as it is spoken today. Modern speakers of Seneca are of course unaware of either the reconstructions or the changes that reshaped them. When current speakers acquired the language in childhood, they undoubtedly assimilated an enormous number of individual words and phrases. When they now create new words they have not heard before, that ability evidently relies on analogies derived from the modern language, a kind of ‘folk morphology’. Most of the present chapter is devoted to explaining the historical basis of today’s language, but section 4.4.1.1 suggests at least one of the ways new words may be created analogically.

A good example of the erosion created by phonological change is available in a word translatable as ‘he eats it’ which, at an earlier time, must have been pronounced *ihra:k. At that time this word could be segmented straightforwardly into the morphemes *i-hra-ks. The verb root -k- ‘eat something’ was preceded by the masculine singular agent prefix *hra- and followed by the habitual aspect suffix *s. The initial *i- fulfilled a Proto-Northern-Iroquoian requirement that verbs contain at least two syllables, thus providing a place for a penultimate accent.

At an early stage Seneca, as well as Cayuga and Onondaga, lost the r in the *hra- prefix and this word became *ihaks. More recently Seneca introduced an entirely new prosodic system that lacked the initial accent, leaving *ihaks without it. In the meantime Seneca lost the k before a final s, and a later development lengthened the a, so that the word was now pronounced *ihas. Still later intervocalic h was lost as well, leaving ias. That is how the word is pronounced today, but the present work follows a convention of writing a lengthened two-vowel sequence like ia: with the colon placed between the two vowels, i:a, no matter which of the two vowels was lengthened historically. Each vowel in such a sequence is pronounced with a length approximately one and a half times the length of a single short vowel. There is thus no phonetic difference between i:as and ias, and for the sake of consistency the latter spelling is the one adopted here. A noteworthy feature of this example is the fact that two-thirds of the pronominal prefix *hra- and all of the verb root *-k- are now missing. Seneca speakers know that i:as means ‘he eats it’, but its historically segmentable parts are no longer available.

Phonological changes have often led to radical differences among members of a paradigm. For example o’gi’ ‘I said’ and waë’ ‘he said’ have nothing in common except for the final glottal stop. However, the reconstructed sequences *wa’ki’ and *wa’hrai can be analyzed transparently as containing the ‘factual’ prefix *wa’, the pronominal prefixes *-k- ‘first person singular agent’ and *-hra- ‘masculine singular agent’, the verb
root *-i- ‘say’, and the ‘punctual’ aspect suffix *-. The at the beginning of the first word wa’ was replaced by o’ and the k was voiced to g, leaving o’gi’. The second word underwent more changes. As early as Pre-Proto-Northern-Iroquoian the glottal stop was lost before h and the sequence ai was reduced to ê, yielding a stage at which this word was pronounced *wahê’. Subsequently the r was lost, leaving *wahë’. The most recent change was the loss of intervocalic h, so that today we are left with o’gi’ and waë’.

Some phonological changes are still in progress and speakers have a choice between a more conservative and a more innovative style of speech, just as English provides a choice, for example, between ‘will not’ and ‘won’t’. Typically the more conservative forms are heard in slow, deliberate, or ritual styles of speaking, whereas the more innovative forms appear in fast, casual, or colloquial styles. The casual style thus provides evidence of changes in progress. Until recently, Seneca speakers used the conservative and casual styles in contexts that were appropriate to each. However, members of the most recent generation of fluent speakers tend to restrict their speech for the most part to casual forms. Nevertheless, examples in the present work are based largely on the conservative style, which is recognized by current speakers, and in which morphological structure is somewhat more transparent. Changes that define the casual style are described in 2.10.

2.2. Seneca vowels today

The vowels of contemporary Seneca are shown in Table 2.1. The two nasalized vowels have been written in different ways at different times, but since the 1970s it has been common practice to spell them with a dieresis or umlaut, ê and ô, jokingly referred to as nostrils. The low front vowel is also spelled with a dieresis, ä, although it is not nasalized. The dieresis, in other words, shows a vowel quality that departs in some way from the quality associated with the plain letter: nasalization in the case of ê and ô, fronting in the case of ä.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Front</th>
<th>Back</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>i</td>
<td>u</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-mid and nasalized</td>
<td>ê</td>
<td>ô</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>ä</td>
<td>a</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.1. Seneca vowels

The apparent symmetry of Table 2.1 is misleading in the sense that it obscures two significant imbalances in the relative frequencies of these vowels. For reasons given in 2.9, the low front vowel ä occurs in significantly fewer words than any of the other vowels except u. This u is the most restricted vowel of all, since it is confined to cases of vowel symbolism where it replaces a as a way of expressing unusually small size. For example:

niwá’a:h  ‘it’s small’  niwú’u:h  ‘it’s tiny’
niyága’a:h  ‘she’s small, a little girl’  niyúgu’u:h  ‘she’s tiny, a tiny girl’

Six of the eight vowels, then, occur with roughly comparable frequency, the vowel ä less often because of its limited history, and the vowel u only in words expressing tiny size.
The two nasalized vowels ë and ö were already present in Proto-Northern-Iroquoian, and for the most part they do not function as nasalized counterparts of oral vowels. However, ö is the nasalized reflex of a in the sequence *na, now pronounced nó, as well as in certain other environments that foster nasal assimilation.

With two minor exceptions Seneca vowels are consistently pronounced with qualities suggested by their positions in Table 2.1. The position of the two nasalized vowels reflects the phonetic values (ɛ) and (ɔ), which are intermediate in height between the mid and low vowels. ¹ The two oral mid vowels e and o, however, have a raised pronunciation under the following limited conditions. A short mid front e is raised to phonetic (i) between n and a velar stop, as with the first e in snegéah ‘drink!’ A short mid back o is raised to phonetic (e) when it is immediately followed by the high front vowel i, as in óiwa’ ‘topic, cause’. One 20th century speaker was heard to pronounce the high back vowel u without rounding, (u), perhaps a retention from a time when lip rounding was virtually absent from the language.

Vowels may be either short or long, and length is marked with a following colon. Sequences of two immediately adjacent vowels may also be short or long, so that ëö, for example, contrasts with ë:ö, where each vowel is approximately one and a half times as long as a short vowel (see the discussion of i:as in 2.1 above). Often the two vowels in such a sequence are identical, so that the triple length sequence a:a contrasts with short a. There are thus three degrees of vowel length—short, long, and over-long—as illustrated in the final portions of ni:ga’ ‘how big I am’, gá’ga:’ ‘crow’, and gaga:a’ ‘story’.

Vowels are pronounced with either low or high pitch. High pitched (‘accented’) vowels are marked with an acute accent: gagá’da’ ‘white oak’. Long vowels may have high pitch throughout their length, as in áhse:gé’ ‘you might see it’, or the pitch may fall, as in á:diyé’he’t ‘they should learn’, where the falling pitch is marked with a grave accent. High pitch may occur with either short or long vowels, but falling pitch occurs only with long vowels. An over-long vowel may also exhibit a falling pitch, as in á:agé’ ‘he might see it’, where the pitch falls steadily throughout the triple length sequence.

2.3. Seneca consonants today

The fifteen Seneca consonants are shown in Table 2.2, where the apostrophe (‘) represents a glottal stop. Here too several features deserve comment. The Northern Iroquoian languages are well known for their lack of labial consonants. The velar resonant w may now be pronounced with a certain degree of lip rounding, but at an earlier time lip movement may have been slight or entirely absent. There is no p, b, or m except in ideophones and nicknames. The voiceless and voiced affricates, despite their spelling with two letters, function as unitary sounds. j, however, is written with a unitary symbol because of habits instilled by English spelling. Roughly half of modern Seneca speakers fail to distinguish dz and j, but pronounce both as j (i.e. dž). Thus, for example, dza:dk ‘seven’ is pronounced by these speakers as ja:dk (dža:dk).

¹ In Chafe 1963 and 1967 these vowels were written e and o.
At an earlier time the Northern Iroquoian languages did not make a phonological distinction between voiced and voiceless stops and affricates, nor did they include palatal consonants other than y. Mohawk and Oneida are still written with only the stops t and k and only the fricative s, and their phonological systems justify those more restricted inventories. In those languages the stops are allophonically voiced before vowels and resonants but are voiceless elsewhere. Seneca has developed a new phonological system in which the earlier consonant clusters th and kh have been reinterpreted as unitary voiceless aspirated stops, written here as t and k, which contrast with the voiced stops d and g (from earlier t and k immediately followed by a vowel, w, or y).

Evidence for this reinterpretation is provided by words like ode:ka’ ‘it’s burning’ with a long vowel in an open penultimate syllable, contrasting with Mohawk yotékha’ with a short accented vowel in a syllable closed by the k. In Seneca the voiceless aspirated k has come to be treated as a single consonant, whereas in Mohawk kh is treated as a cluster that straddles two syllables. In Seneca earlier *te has been reinterpreted as de, and earlier *the as te. Parallel developments have replaced *ke with ge and *khe with ke. Affricates have been reinterpreted in a parallel way, so that earlier ts before a vowel is now dz, earlier tsh is now ts, earlier tš before a vowel is now dž (=dž), and earlier tšh is now tš. It should be noted that the spelling used here is preferred by Seneca speakers, who find that it comes closer to actual pronunciation.

Many but not all instances of the palatal fricative š are derived from an earlier sequence sy. The palatal affricate tš has two sources. One is the earlier sequence *tši, now tši, where s was palatalized by the following i. But š is also present in the current pronunciation of an earlier sequence thy, in which hy was pronounced as a voiceless fricative y distinct from š. Until a few decades ago thy was thus distinct from tš (where the s was palatalized by a following i), but today the two have now fallen together as tš. A parallel development occurred with the voiced affricates. The affricate j (dž) derives in part from the palatalization of dz before i, but in part from an earlier dy, which earlier contained a voiced fricative y and was thus distinct from dž. It is likely that these changes of thy to tš and dy to j were influenced by the constant exposure of modern speakers to the affricates spelled ch and j in English.

Despite the lack of labial consonants, the sounds p, b, and m do occur in a few nicknames such as Gó’bit and Dagam, as well as in ideophones such as ba’s ‘the crunching sound of a breaking skull’, bläts ‘the sound of fat legs slapping together’, and plo’ts ‘plop’ (cf. Mithun 1982).
2.4. Vowels and consonants reconstructed for Proto-Northern-Iroquoian

The vowels of Proto-Northern-Iroquoian can be reconstructed as in Table 2.3. There were four oral and two nasalized vowels. In Mohawk, Oneida, and Onondaga the back nasalized vowel (here written ò) has moved higher—in Mohawk and Onondaga to a high back position (û) and in Oneida to high mid (û)—and in Mohawk and Oneida (but not Onondaga) the front nasalized vowel (é) has moved further back (Ą). The low front vowel ā is found only in Seneca and Onondaga.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Front</th>
<th>Back</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>High</td>
<td>i</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mid</td>
<td>e</td>
<td>o</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low-mid and nasalized</td>
<td>ê</td>
<td>ò</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Low</td>
<td>a</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.3. The vowels of Proto-Northern-Iroquoian

The consonants of Proto-Northern-Iroquoian can be reconstructed as in Table 2.4. As discussed above, the voicing distinction in the stops and affricates was not distinctive, nor were there any palatal obstruents. Whether the affricate ts functioned as a unitary sound or as a sequence of t followed by s is an open question. In any case the language at that stage could be written with only three obstruents—t, k, and s—and a total inventory of only nine consonants along with the six vowels.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>Alveolar</th>
<th>Palatal</th>
<th>Velar</th>
<th>Laryngeal</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Stops</td>
<td>t</td>
<td>k</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fricative</td>
<td>s</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Affricate</td>
<td>ts</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glottal stop</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>h</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Glottal continuant</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Resonants</td>
<td>n, r, y, w</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.4. The consonants of Proto-Northern-Iroquoian

2.5. Reconstructed Seneca at an earlier time

To understand the phonological shape of modern Seneca words it is necessary to begin with reconstructed forms that reflect the way the language was spoken before a large number of phonological changes took place (Chafe 1959a). To judge from the dictionaries attributed to the Jesuit missionary Julien Garnier (Chapter 1), most of the changes that set modern Seneca apart from the other Northern Iroquoian languages occurred subsequent to Garnier’s contact with the language and before the work of Asher Wright and others in the 19th century, when the language had acquired something close to its present form. Many of those changes must be applied in the order given below, although for others the order is irrelevant. In describing these changes it is useful to refer to the following classes of vowels and consonants:

- vowels  \( V = i, e, a, o, u, ê, ò \)
- oral vowels  \( V_O = i, e, a, o, u \)
- nasalized vowels  \( V_N = ê, ò \)
- last vowel in a word  \( V_L \)
penultimate or earlier vowel \( V_P \)
consonants \( C \) = \( t, k, s, ts, h, ', n, y, w, r \)
obstruents \( O \) = \( t, k, s, ts, h, ' \)
oral obstruents \( O_O \) = \( t, k, s, ts \)
laryngeal obstruents \( O_L \) = \( h, ' \)
resonants \( R \) = \( n, y, w, r \)

2.6. The assignment of vowel length in modern Seneca

With one exception, the reconstructed forms given in parentheses in this work include neither vowel length nor accent, making it possible to state the uniquely Seneca assignment of those features. The one exception applies to the last vowel in a word that ends in a laryngeal obstruent. Whether a vowel in that position is short or long is unpredictable, and thus it is necessary to specify its length in reconstructions. In the statements to follow, ‘even-numbered’ and ‘odd-numbered’ refer to the position of a vowel as it is counted from the beginning of a word. At this reconstructed stage of the language ‘vowel’ and ‘syllable’ are synonymous, although in modern Seneca that is no longer true. (The examples cited in the following sections often include changes in addition to those being illustrated.)

2.6.1. Vowel length in an even-numbered penult. An even-numbered penultimate vowel was lengthened unless it was immediately followed by a laryngeal obstruent.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{wa’agwaga:we’} & \quad \text{‘we rowed’ (*wa’yakwakawe’)} \\
\text{wa:diyë:to’} & \quad \text{‘they planted’ (*wa’hatiyëtho’)}
\end{align*}
\]

Length is absent in the following examples because the even-numbered penultimate vowel was followed by a laryngeal obstruent. Regarding the accent see 2.7.1 below.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{wa:diyë’he’t} & \quad \text{‘they learned it’ (*wa’hatiwyë’he’t)} \\
\text{agadwëdëhdöh} & \quad \text{‘I’ve lent it’ (*wakatwëtehtöh)}
\end{align*}
\]

2.6.2. Vowel length in an odd-numbered penult. An odd-numbered penultimate vowel was lengthened if it was followed by only one consonant before the next vowel (i.e. was in an open syllable), if that consonant was not a laryngeal obstruent, and if the vowel was not a.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{wa’öhdë:di’d} & \quad \text{‘she went’ (*wa’yöhtëti’)} \\
\text{o:yò’ti:yet} & \quad \text{‘it’s sharp’ (*yoho’thiyëht)}
\end{align*}
\]

Length is absent in the following example because the odd-numbered penultimate vowel was followed by two consonants.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{waodinya:k} & \quad \text{‘they got married’ (*wa’hotinyak)}
\end{align*}
\]

Length is absent in the following example because the odd-numbered penultimate vowel was followed by a laryngeal obstruent.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{niyáwë’öh} & \quad \text{‘how it has happened’ (*niyawë’öh)}
\end{align*}
\]
Length is absent in the following example because the odd-numbered penultimate vowel was a.

\[ \text{ëyödawë} \] ‘she’s going to bathe’ (*ëyötawë’)

However, penultimate a was lengthened if it was the first vowel in a word, unless that word was an imperative.

\[ \text{ha:döh} \] ‘he says’ (*hatöh)

This length is absent in an imperative.

\[ \text{śadö:h} \] ‘write!’ (*shyatö:h)

The exemption of the vowel a from lengthening in an odd-numbered penult may be traced to a time when a sometimes appeared as an epenthetic ‘stem-joiner’ vowel (following an incorporated noun root), and was therefore exempt from the prominence otherwise assigned to penultimate vowels. As is still the case in Mohawk and Oneida, with the stem-joiner a the usual penultimate prominence was passed on to an antepenultimate vowel. Seneca no longer gives special treatment to stem-joiner vowels, but does give special treatment to an odd-numbered penultimate a as described above.

2.6.3. Vowel length from other sources. Word-level prosody as described above may combine with other changes to produce words in which vowel length stems from other sources, several of which are illustrated in the following word.

\[ \text{wá:te:nö:yë:'} \] (*wa’hathehnayë’) ‘he set down his burden’

As stated in 2.6 above, length in the last vowel in a word where a laryngeal obstruent follows is not predictable and thus needs to be specified in reconstructions, as in this example. The even-numbered penultimate vowel in this word was lengthened because it was not immediately followed by a laryngeal obstruent: *wa’hathehnayë’. The lengthening of the antepenultimate vowel resulted from the loss of h before a resonant (in this case n) with compensatory lengthening: *wa’hathe:nayë’. The second vowel was accented in accordance with 2.7.1 below: *wa’hathe:nayë’. There followed a loss of * before h and then a loss of the intervocalic h, *waátthe:nayë’, and then the spreading of the accent to yield a single accented long vowel: *wá:thet:ena:yë’. Other changes in this word included a change of a to ö after n, *wá:thet:nö:yë’, and a reinterpretation of th as t, leading to the pronunciation wá:te:nö:yë’, with lengthened vowels from four different sources.

2.7. The assignment of accent in modern Seneca

As mentioned in 2.2, accented vowels are higher in pitch than unaccented vowels, and some long vowels have falling pitch. Figure 2.1 shows the pitch contour of the word niyó’ningò:dë:h (*niyo’niköhrö’te:h) ‘what its mind is like’. There is a high pitch on the first (short) o, and a high-falling pitch on the second (long) o: (where öhro > öho > öö > ö). The final ë was pronounced with a discourse (rather than morphological) rising contour that indicated more to come.
2.7.1 Accenting of an even-numbered short vowel. An even-numbered short vowel was accented if (a) it was not the last vowel in a word and (b) it was followed by a laryngeal obstruent, by a cluster of two or more obstruents of any kind, or by kn, tn, sn, sw, or sy.

With a following laryngeal obstruent:

\[ \text{hahnyö'ôh} \] (*hahnyö'ôh) ‘white man’

With a following obstruent cluster (here kt):

\[ \text{onakta'keh} \] (*onakta'keh) ‘on the bed’

With a following sn:

\[ \text{niyosnore'} \] (*niyosnore’) ‘how fast it is’

2.7.2. Accenting of an even-numbered short vowel when the following odd-numbered vowel conformed to 2.7.1. An even-numbered short vowel was accented if the following (odd-numbered) vowel had one of the properties listed in 2.7.1.

\[ \text{kekota'keh} \] (*kekota'keh) ‘on my nose’

A plausible way to describe this influence of the following vowel on accent assignment is to ignore the first vowel in a word and then divide the remainder into trochaic feet (Melinger 2002). A ‘strong’ trochee can then be defined as one in which either of its two vowels fulfills one of the properties listed in 2.7.1. In that case an accent is assigned to the first vowel of the trochee, even if the determining property belongs to the second vowel. The word \[ \text{dë:në'negewënya'ta'} \] ‘they amuse themselves’ can be reconstructed as follows, where the numbers show the vowel count and the hyphens divide the word into trochaic feet, ignoring the first vowel.

\[ *\text{de-hënë'-nigëh-rawër-yá'ta'} \]

The trochaic feet consist of vowels 2-3, 4-5, 6-7, and 8-9. Vowels 3, 5, and 8 fulfilled the criteria for accent placement, because each was followed by a laryngeal obstruent. Thus trochees 2-3, 4-5, and 8-9 were strong and were accented on their first vowel (vowels 2, 4, and 8 as shown with the accent marks). Vowel 6 was not accented because neither it nor vowel 7 defined a strong trochee. (Note at the beginning of \[ \text{dë:në'negewënya'ta'} \] the reduction of \[ \text{dehë} \] to \[ \text{dë:} \] (2.10))

2.7.3. Words with multiple accents. As evident in the preceding example, a word may contain more than one accent. As another example, the word \[ \text{yötgöhsagëwëta'} \] ‘face
towel’, literally ‘one uses it to wipe one’s face’, shows an accent on every even-numbered vowel.

*yöt-kóhsa-kóhe-wáthta’

In this case the first vowel of each trochee was followed by h and thus received the accent. Later the second and third h’s were lost: the second because it was intervocalic, the third because it was followed by two obstruents.

2.7.4. Words with no accent. Many words contain no word-level accent at all, since they lack any trochaic feet in which either the first or second vowel fulfilled the criteria listed in 2.7.1. An example is deyagadawënye:h ‘people are moving about’, literally ‘stirring’.

2.7.5. The absence of accenting on initial and final vowels. The first and last vowels of a word were exempt from word-level accenting. The trochaic pattern was established by ignoring the first vowel, and the last vowel could not belong to the first syllable of a trochee. There is, however, a quite different pattern of accent assignment that is imposed at the discourse level rather than the word level, which often does assign an accent to the last vowel in a word (see Figure 2.1).

2.7.6. Accent spreading. The loss of r and of intervocalic h often produced uninterrupted vowel sequences. If the second of two adjacent vowels was accent ed the accent spread backward to include both of them, as in *ëhatekhöni’ ‘he will eat’. If the two vowels were identical, the result was a long accented vowel, as in *ëhënatekhö:ni’ ‘they will eat’. If, on the other hand, it was the first of the two vowels that received the accent, it did not spread rightward to the second vowel. The result is instead a falling pitch, either on two different vowels, as in onëögwe:göh (*onëhakweköh’) ‘whole corn’, or on a single long vowel with a falling pitch, written with a grave accent, as in watà:négësh ‘roads close together’.

2.7.7. Three definitions of ‘closed syllable’. The assignment of length and accent described in 2.6.1 through 2.7.6 implies three distinct definitions of ‘closed syllable’. In the following statements the laryngeal obstruents ’ and h function as ambisyllabic; that is, when they occur alone between two vowels (V’V or VhV), they function both as the coda of the preceding syllable and the onset of the following syllable.

(a) In the assignment of length in an even-numbered penult, a closed syllable was one whose vowel was followed immediately by a laryngeal obstruent (2.6.1).

(b) In the assignment of length in an odd-numbered penult, a closed syllable was one whose coda was any consonant (2.6.2).

(c) In the assignment of accent, a closed syllable was one whose vowel was followed by a laryngeal obstruent, by a cluster of any two or more obstruents, or by kn, tn, sn, sw, or sy (2.7.1).

2.8. Phonological changes shared with all the Northern Iroquoian languages
Results of the following changes are recognizable in all the Northern Iroquoian languages, and are thus inferred to have taken place at some stage prior to Proto-Northern-Iroquoian. They preceded the Seneca assignment of length and accent described in 2.6 and 2.7.

**Addition of a prothetic ‘i’ if a verb would otherwise contain only one vowel.** This change created a location for the Proto-Northern-Iroquoian penultimate accent, but that accent was later replaced by the Seneca accent pattern described in 2.7.

\[ i:ga:' (i-kar') \text{ ‘it’s in it’} \]

**Simplification of a vowel sequence linking a pronominal prefix to a base.** The following changes change the odd-even vowel count that determines the assignment of vowel length and accent as described in 2.6 and 2.7. Other alternations applicable to pronominal prefixes are treated in terms of allomorphic variants as set forth in Table 3.1 of Chapter 3.

\[ *a-i > \ddot{e} \text{. A possible explanation for this spontaneous nasalization is the likelihood that ai coalesced to form a vowel in the low mid position (e), where it fell together with an existing vowel that was already nasalized.} \]

\[ gødöh (*ka-itöh) \text{ ‘it means’} \]

\[ *ye-e \text{ or } *ye-ë > yë \]

\[ i:yë’s (*iye-e’s) \text{ ‘she’s around’} \]

\[ wa’ë:’ (*wa’ye-er’) \text{ ‘she thought’} \]

\[ *ye-a > ÿö. Although the change appears on the surface to have taken this form, its origin was more likely in the sequence *yaw-a, making it a variant of the change that follows.} \]

\[ yöödögweta’ (*ye-atökwheta’) \text{ ‘she’s in good health’} \]

\[ *wa’wak > *yü. The reduction of wa(‘)wa to ÿ applied in more environments in the other Northern Iroquoian languages, but in Seneca it was for the most part restricted to cases where the factual prefix wa’- was followed by the 1st person singular patient prefix wak-. It is likely that wa’wa coalesced to form a vowel in the low back position (ö), where it fell together with an existing vowel that was already nasalized.} \]

\[ ögahda’t (*wa’wakahta’) \text{ ‘I got full’} \]

\[ * > 0 / -h \text{ (loss of glottal stop before h). This change is limited in Seneca to the boundary between the factual prefix wa’- and a following pronominal prefix with an initial h, which was later itself lost intervocalically and before a resonant.} \]

\[ wá:da:ödö:’ (*wa’hatahrötö:) \text{ ‘they (m.sg.agt) asked’} \]
a Grammar of the Seneca Language

wa:yáda:ödö:’ (*wa’hyatahröö:’) ‘they (m.du.agt) asked’

The sequence ‘h is now found in numerous other morphological environments, for example

ó’he’öh (*yöh’e’öh) ‘it has stopped’
agá’hö:n (*waka’höö) ‘I’ve attached something to it’

*sy > š (palatalization of s before y).

šënë:da’t (*syënëta’t) ‘finish it!’
ša:söh (*yasöö) ‘you’re called, your name is’

2.9. Phonological changes not shared with all the Northern Iroquoian languages

Some of the changes in this section are unique to Seneca, while others are shared with Cayuga and/or Onondaga. There is an attempt to list these changes in the order in which they occurred, judging from their interaction. Such ordering, however, cannot always be determined with any certainty (cf. Chafe 1968, Chafe and Foster 1981).

w > 0 / k-# (loss of word-final w after k). This change applies both to bases ending in kw and to the instrumental suffix -hkw.

o’tgek (*wa’tchékw) ‘I picked it up’
o’gajá:dak (*wa’katyera’tahkw) ‘I used it’

k, t > 0 / -s# (loss of t and k before word-final s).

ita:s (*ithats) ‘he stands there’
i:as (*ihaks) ‘he eats it’

Vl > Vl: / -Oo# (lengthening of the last vowel in a word before a word-final obstruent).

See examples just above.

y > 0 / #, ’- (loss of y word-initially and after a glottal stop). This change is commonly seen in pronominal prefixes with an initial y. However, word-initial y was not lost in the feminine singular agent prefix.

agwa:s (*yakwaks) ‘we (ex.pl) eat it’
wa’a:gwa:k (*wa’yakwak ‘we (ex.pl) ate it’
wa’eyëto’ (*wa’yeyëthöö) ‘she planted’
but yeyë:twas (*yeyëthwahs) ‘she plants’

r > n / -y (r became n before y). This change appears to have predated Garnier’s dictionaries. For example, Garnier’s onnaganiagon ‘castor’, Seneca (o)noganyá’göö ‘beaver’ with noun root *-nakar- ‘stick’ followed by verb root *-ya’k- ‘cut, break’.
deyöwënyeh (*teyöwëryeh) ‘she stirs it’

\[ r > w / o, ö - V_o \] (r became w between o or ö and an oral vowel).

wa’é’ho:we:k (*wa’ye’horek) ‘she covered it’
gë’dö:wë’ (*kai’törë’) ‘bottom’

\[ r > y / i-V_o \] (r became y between i and an oral vowel).

yewi:yä’ (*yewira’) ‘her offspring’

\[ r > y / O_o - o, ö \] (r became y between an oral obstruent and o or ö).

të’jö’ (*thai’trö’) ‘he stays there’

\[ a > ä / r- \] (a became ä after r).

sägoh (*srakoh) ‘take it out’

\[ ä > e / -ro \] (short a became e before ro).

ëgegeodë’ (*ëkekarotë’) ‘I’ll tell a story’

\[ å > ĕ / -rō \] (short a became ĕ before rō).

ostëöjö:h (*ostarötyö:h) ‘it’s raining’

\[ r > 0 / V-V \] (loss of r between vowels).

See the last two examples.

\[ R > : / -O_t# \] (loss of a resonant before a final laryngeal obstruent with compensatory lengthening).

i:ga:’ (*ikar’) ‘it’s in it’

otga:h (*otkarh) ‘it’s making a noise’

\[ hR > 0 / V-V \] (loss of h plus a resonant between vowels).

o’soö’ (*o’sohra’) ‘white pine’

knöe’s (*knöhwe’s) ‘I like it’

\[ R > 0 / -h \] (loss of a resonant before h).

gaha:da’ (*karhata’) ‘forest’

\[ r > 0 \] (complete loss of r). Compare Garnier okte’ra’ ‘ractine’ with Seneca okdé’a’ ‘root’ (*oktehra’).

oënö’ (*orëna’) ‘song’
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

VVp: > VVp (shortening of a penultimate or earlier vowel sequence).

\[ \text{oënō’ (*orēna’)} \text{ ‘song’} \]

h > 0 / V-V (loss of h between vowels). This change must have followed that described just above. Otherwise the word would be gaöwō’.

\[ \text{gaöwō’ (*kahōwa’)} \text{ ‘boat’} \]

h > 0 / -OO or -O# (loss of h before two obstruents, or before a single word-final obstruent).

\[ \text{o’nisda’ (*o’nihsta’)} \text{ ‘corn on the cob’} \]
\[ \text{hashe:das (*hashetahs)} \text{ ‘he counts, accountant’} \]

h > : / V-R (loss of h before a resonant with compensatory vowel lengthening).

\[ \text{hadē:nē:nōs (*hatēninōhs)} \text{ ‘he sells, salesman’} \]

a > ä / -ä (fronting of a to ä before ä).

\[ \text{okji’gā’ (*oktsi’kara’)} \text{ ‘stump’} \]

ä > a / a−, á− (defronting of ä to a after a: or á). This change may better be regarded as a restriction on the preceding change.

\[ \text{oya:a’ (*oyara’)} \text{ ‘bag’} \]
\[ \text{o’wā:’ (*o’wahra’)} \text{ ‘meat’ (see iV_i > i: below)} \]

a > ö / n- (nasalization of a to ö after n).

\[ \text{ganōdayē’ (*kanatayē’)} \text{ ‘town’} \]

a > ö / ĕ- (nasalization of a to ö after ĕ).

\[ \text{êōtaē’ (*ēhatharē’)} \text{ ‘he will talk’} \]

a > ö / ēw- (nasalization of a to ö after ēw).

\[ \text{ēwō:dō’ (*ēwatō’)} \text{ ‘it will become’} \]

a > ö / ēh- (nasalization of a to ö after ēh).

\[ \text{gēhō:de’ (*kaiyhate’)} \text{ ‘river’} \]

a > ö / ē’- (nasalization of a to ö after ē’).

\[ \text{ji’đē’ō:h (*tsi’tē’ahah)} \text{ ‘bird’} \]

a > ö / ö- (nasalization of a to ö after ö).
gwa’yô:’ (*kwa’yōha’) ‘rabbit’

a > ö / öw- (nasalization of a to ö after öw).

oyö:wo’ (*oyōwa’) ‘tall plant’

a > ö / ö- (nasalization of a to ö after ö).

ji’dē’ö:h (*tsi’tē’ahah) ‘bird’

ë > e / -e, -o (denasalization of ë to e before e or o).

ë:yatšō:wi’ (*čheyathrori’) ‘I’ll tell about him’

dōtā:k (*čhotharahk) ‘he’ll be the speaker’

ö > o / -o (denasalization of ö to o before o).

o’gō:owi’ (*wa’gōhrori’) ‘I told you’

VV > V́́V́́ (spread of the accent to the left).

waēnō:et (*wa’hēnōhet) ‘they stayed overnight’

V₁V₁ > V₁: (rewriting of two identical vowels in sequence as one long vowel).

gahsigwā:’ (*kahsikwara’) ‘fork’

gå:’tēshā’ (*kara’thēshra’) ‘stairs’

V́₁V₁ > V́₁: (rewriting of two identical vowels in sequence as one long vowel with falling pitch if there is an accent on the first).

o’wā:’ (*o’wahra’) ‘meat’

VV > V:V (rewriting of the colon).

sga:e’ (*skaher’) ‘it’s on it again’

V:V > V:V (shortening of two long vowels in sequence).

wa:e’ (*wa’haher’) ‘he thought’

V:V₁ > V (shortening of an antepenultimate vowel sequence).

wāēöyăgē’dak (*wa’harōhyakē’tahk) ‘he worked hard at it’

k > g / -V or -Rₙ (k became g before a vowel, or before a resonant other than n).

o’gā:wa:k (*wa’kawak) ‘I sifted it’

t > d / -V or -Rₙ (t became d before a vowel, or before a resonant other than n).
oyë:de:t (*oyëtet) ‘it shows, is apparent’

dy > j (=dž) (voiced fricative y became ž).

o’ja:gwat (*wa’tyakwat) ‘we danced’

thy > tšh (voiceless fricative y became šh).

o’tša:dät (*wa’thya’ta’t) ‘they (du) came together’ (see tšh > tš below)

tsi > ji (=dži)

jisgë:h (*tsiskë:h) ‘ghost, skeleton’

tshi > tši

tši’jó’ (*tshi’tró’) ‘you live there’

hshr > tš /


ts > dz / -V or -Rₙ (ts became dz before a vowel, or before a resonant other than n).

dzakókdö:h (*tsakoktö:h) ‘she has returned’

kh > k (kh became voiceless aspirated k).

   ka’da:tiś (*kha’tathiëhs) ‘I’m thirsty’

th > t (th became voiceless aspirated t).

See the preceding example.

    tsh > ts

    tsa’de:wa’ (*tsha’tewa’) ‘it’s the same size’

    tšh > tš

    tši’jó’ (*tshi’tró’) ‘you live there’

    t > n / Vₙ-# (word-final t became n after a nasalized vowel). This change took place after the middle of the 20th century.

    dedwa:dö:n (*tetwatöt) ‘let’s eat together’

    tn > hn (tn > thn > hn).

    de:yádahno’e’s (*tehyatnöhwe’s) ‘they like each other’
2.10. Phonological changes still in progress and applying only to casual speech
ä > ë / n- (ä was replaced by ë after n).

\[ \text{onáhda} > \text{onéhda} \] (*onrahta) ‘leaf’

Vë > êë (spreading of ê to a preceding vowel).

\[ \text{jojéhdöh} > \text{jojé:hdöh} \] (*tyotyerëhtöh) ‘it’s first’
\[ \text{dewagadöëdzo:nih} > \text{dewagadëdzo:nih} \] (*tewakatöhrëtsonih) ‘I need it’

eo > o: (spreading of o to preceding e).

\[ \text{deódöëdzo:nih} > \text{dó:döëdzo:nih} \] (*tehotöhrëtsonih) ‘he needs it’

eö > ö: (spreading of ö to preceding e).

\[ \text{deówösnye} > \text{dó:wösnye} \] (*tehöwasnye’) ‘she’s taking care of him’

ia > ya: (reduction of i to y with compensatory lengthening of the following vowel).

\[ \text{niájeha} > \text{nyá:jeha} \] (*nihatyerha’) ‘he does it’
3. V E R B M O R P H O L O G Y  P A R T 1:
T H E  M I N I M A L  V E R B

3.1. Introduction

Verbs constitute by far the most frequent word type in Seneca, as in the other Iroquoian languages. Based solely on internal morphological structure, in a sample of approximately 12,500 different words, different verbs constituted 85%, different nouns 9%, and different particles 6%. The number of different verb types is essentially open-ended. If all possible combinations of verb bases with prefixes and suffixes were counted, the number would be staggeringly high. When it comes to word tokens, however, the most frequently occurring words in actual speech are particles, since a small number of these words occur with great frequency.

Verbs follow a structural pattern that was first comprehensively and accurately described by Floyd Lounsbury in his *Oneida Verb Morphology* (1953), a work that has been basic to all subsequent work on the Northern Iroquoian languages. Although there are differences in each of these languages, most of the differences are relatively minor. There are, on the other hand, major differences in the phonological changes that have occurred in each language, and it is above all those changes that have set the languages significantly apart.

Seneca has undergone especially radical phonological change, as described in Chapter 2. As a result, although the components of a Seneca verb are very similar to those in the other languages, the forms of the verbs often diverge considerably. The following are words translatable as ‘I drank’ in Proto-Northern-Iroquoian, Onondaga, and Seneca (Chafe 1984). Seneca replaced the initial *wa’*- with o’-, the final *-hra’* with -ä’, and (less systematically) the *i* with e. As these examples suggest, phonological erosion has often made Seneca words shorter than those in the other languages.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Proto-Northern-Iroquoian:</th>
<th><em>wa’khnekihra’</em></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Onondaga:</td>
<td>wa’khne:g hä’</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seneca:</td>
<td>o’knégeä’</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Seneca verbs are built on a *verb base* that conveys the idea of an event or state. A minimal verb base consists of a *verb root*. Derivational processes that create more complex verb bases are described in Chapter 5. A verb base is always followed by an *aspect suffix* that orients the event or state in time and in other ways, and a base is nearly always preceded by a *pronominal prefix* that conveys the idea of a participant or participants in the event or state. A verb that contains nothing more than these three components ends with either of two aspect suffixes labeled *habitual* (Lounsbury’s *serial*) and *stative* (Lounsbury’s *perfective*). Verbs that end with the *imperative* suffix may have the same minimal structure, but because they differ in other ways they are described separately in Chapter 16. The pronominal prefix may belong to a set of *agent* prefixes, a set of *patient* prefixes, or a set of *transitive* prefixes that include both an agent and a patient. Figure 3.1 shows this minimal verb structure.
3.2. The habitual and stative aspect suffixes

3.2.1. Meanings of the habitual and stative suffixes. Verbs with this minimal structure exhibit only two aspect suffix forms, habitual and stative (Lounsbury’s iterative and perfective), but there are four aspectual meanings that are expressed by those two forms.

(1) ‘habitual’ (a habitual or generic event)
(2) ‘progressive’ (an event that extends before and after the moment of speaking)
(3) ‘perfect’ (a past event with current relevance)
(4) ‘stative’ (a state)

These four meanings are distributed across the two forms in ways that are determined by the nature of the verb base, and specifically whether its meaning is consequential or nonconsequential. With a consequential base an event ‘results in a new state of affairs that is significantly different from the way things were before the event took place, a state of affairs that is significant enough to be often talked about’ (Chafe 1980b: 44). Examples are *-yēthw-'plant’, *-the’t- ‘pound (corn)’, and *-ya’k- ‘cut or break’. With a nonconsequential base the event does not create the same kind of significant result, as with *-skatkwē/h-'laugh’, *-hthar- ‘talk’, and *-ashet- ‘count’. Some bases allow either possibility, as with *-k- ‘eat something’, *-hawi- ‘carry something’, and *-ēnōhet- ‘spend the night’. With the base meaning ‘eat something’, for example, attention may be focused either on the activity of eating (nonconsequential) or on the result of eating (consequential), as when the eater is no longer hungry.

3.2.1.1. Nonconsequential events. Figure 3.2 shows the options for a nonconsequential event. The distribution of meanings is straightforward: a habitual event is expressed with the habitual suffix, a progressive event with the stative suffix. Nonconsequential events are incompatible with the perfect meaning; one does not say ‘he has laughed’, for

---

2 Chafe 1967 called the stative suffix the descriptive.
example. There is, however, one complication. A participant that is expressed with an agent pronominal prefix in the habitual aspect is expressed with a patient prefix in the stative aspect. Examples:

With the agent prefix *ha- ‘he’ and the habitual suffixes *-s or *-ha’:

- hasgá:tgwë’s ‘he laughs’ (*ha-skatkwë’-s)
- hata:ha’ ‘he talks’ (*ha-hthar-’a)

With the patient prefix *ho- ‘he’ and the stative suffixes *-öh or *-’:

- hosgá:tgwë’öh ‘he’s laughing’ (*ho-skatkwë’-öh)
- hota:’ ‘he’s talking’ (*ho-hthar-’)

With the transitive prefix *khe(y)- ‘I > her/them’ and the habitual suffixes *-ahs or *-’:

- keyáshe:das ‘I count them’ (*khey-ashet-ahs)
- keshe’s ‘I follow/chase her/them’ (*khe-hshe-’s)

With the transitive prefix *khe(y)- ‘I > her/them’ and the stative suffixes *-ëh or *-’:

- keyáshe:dëh ‘I’m counting them’ (*khey-ashet-ëh)
- keshe’ ‘I’m following her or them’ (*khe-hshe-’)

3.2.1.2. Consequential events. Figure 3.3 shows the options for a consequential event. Both habitual and progressive events are expressed with the habitual suffix. (Compare the European languages in which the same form may be translated either ‘he plants’ or ‘he is planting’.) A perfect event, which is not expressible with a nonconsequential base, is expressed for a consequential event with the stative suffix. As with nonconsequential bases, the stative aspect occurs with patient prefixes. A comparison of Figures 3.2 and 3.3 illustrates the ambiguity of the stative suffix. With a nonconsequential event it has the progressive meaning, with a consequential event it has the perfect meaning.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>aspectual meaning</th>
<th>pronominal prefix</th>
<th>verb base</th>
<th>aspect suffix form</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>habitual or progressive</td>
<td>agent or patient or transitive</td>
<td>consequential</td>
<td>habitual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>perfect</td>
<td>patient or transitive</td>
<td>consequential</td>
<td>stative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 3.3. Aspectual meanings and forms for a consequential base

With the agent prefix *ha- ‘he’ and the habitual suffixes *-ahs or *-s:

- hayë:twas ‘he plants or is planting’ (*ha-yëtthw-ahs)
- ha:ya’s ‘he cuts or is cutting it’ (*ha-ya’k-s)

With the patient prefix *ho- ‘he’ and the stative suffix *-öh:
hoyë:töh 'he has planted' (*ho-yëthw-öh)
hoyá'göh ‘he has broken/cut it’ (*ho-ya’k-öh)

With the transitive prefix *khe- ‘I > her/them’ and the habitual suffixes *-s or *-’s:

keha’s ‘I hire or am hiring her/them’ (*khe-nha’-s)
keye:nö:s ‘I catch or am catching her/them’ (*khe-yenö-s)

With the transitive prefix *khe- ‘I > her / them’ and stative suffixes *-öh or *-’:

kehá’öh ‘I’ve hired her/them’ (*khe-nha’-öh)
keye:nö ‘I’ve caught her/them’ (*khe-yenö-’)

3.2.2. Stative-only verb roots. Although most Seneca verb roots occur in both the habitual and stative aspects, there are some that occur only in the stative. Most of them involve something or someone being in a state. Some of those take a patient prefix such as o- or ho-.

osde’ ‘it’s heavy’
hohsë:h ‘he’s fat’

Others take an agent prefix such as w- or ha-.

waga:yöh ‘it’s old’
hagowanëh ‘he’s big, important’

There is a tendency for agent prefixes to occur with more permanent states, but the choice is now largely arbitrary and unpredictable. The above examples have adjective-like meanings, but other stative-only roots do not. They too may take either patient or agent prefixes.

otga:h ‘it’s making a noise’
hóio’dë’ ‘he’s working’
hano:ge’ ‘he lives, dwells’
ha:awi’ ‘he’s carrying it’

Further examples are provided in Chafe (2012b).

3.2.3. Forms of the habitual and stative suffixes. The forms of these two aspect suffixes vary considerably, and are determined in mostly arbitrary ways by the last element in the preceding base. The following forms of the habitual aspect suffix have been recorded.

*-ahs *-yëthw-ahs ‘plants’, *-ashet-ahs ‘counts’, *-atihëthw-ahs ‘pulls’
*-a’ *-atkw-a’ ‘dances’, *-noröhkwa- ‘loves’, *-yerä’tahkw- ‘uses’
*-a’s *-wyëh-a’s ‘knows how’, *-atöhn-a’s ‘holds a condolence ceremony’
*-e’s *-aty-e’s ‘throws’, *-yö’sehn- ‘goes and visits’, *-atöry-e’s ‘breathes’
*-ëh *-nöt-ëh ‘feeds’, *-atënot-ëh ‘acts generously’
*-ëhs *-hnya’kh-ëhs ‘puts together’
The following forms of the stative aspect suffix have been recorded.

-ôh  *-the’t-ôh ‘is pounding corn’, *-ya’k-ôh ‘has cut’, *-k-ôh ‘has eaten’ or ‘is eating’
* -e’  *-asnor-e’ ‘be fast’, *-atêt-e’ ‘be loose, hanging in the air’, *-keht-e’
  ‘carry on the back’
* -êh  *-asht-êh ‘is counting’
* -h  *-nêhkwi:-h ‘has hauled away’
* -ih  *-yëter-ih ‘knows’, *-ato’ktahk-ih, ‘is extreme’, *-tokëht-ih ‘is holy’
- *  * -hthar-’i ‘is talking’, *-hawi-‘i ‘is carrying’
- *-t  *-t ‘be standing’, *-köt ‘be irrevocable’, *-es-/is-/ös ‘be long’

3.3. The punctual aspect suffix and the modal prefixes

3.3.1. Introduction. In addition to the habitual and stative aspect suffixes, there is another commonly occurring aspect suffix which, following Lounsbury, Iroquoian linguists have called the punctual. A better name for it might be eventive, contrasting with stative, because it functions to signal an event rather than a state, but the term punctual is firmly established in the Iroquoian literature. This suffix differs from the habitual and stative aspect suffixes in requiring the presence of a modal prefix, which precedes the pronominal prefix. There are three modal prefixes, labeled here factual (Lounsbury’s aorist), future (Lounsbury’s future), and hypothetical (Lounsbury’s indefinite).3 Punctual verbs thus have four parts rather than three, as shown in Figure 3.4. Although a modal prefix usually occurs with the punctual aspect suffix, circumstances under which it may occur with a habitual or stative aspect suffix are described in 6.5.

---

3 In Chafe 1967 these are called indicative, future, and optative.
3.3.2.1. The factual prefix. The factual prefix is very often translated with an English past tense because an event remembered from the past is one whose reality was established by its past occurrence. In other uses of this prefix, however, it may express an event that is simultaneous with the act of speaking. The verb o'ge:ge', for example, may be translated ‘I saw it’ with the English past tense, but the same word is equally appropriate if I am looking through a window and see something at this very moment: ‘I see it’. Its reality stems in the latter case, not from its earlier occurrence, but from the speaker’s immediate perception of it. The factual prefix is also used when interest is centered on occurrences that are typical of multiple past events, often translatable with the English present: wa’oge:se: ‘she drives me’, said by an elderly speaker whose daughter drove her to various places.

3.3.2.2. The future prefix. The future prefix is typically translated with an English future tense, as with êge:ge’ ‘I’ll see it’ or ‘I’m going to see it’. An event predicted for the future is not yet judged to be factual, but it is judged to have a relatively high probability of actually occurring. The future is also found in contexts where English would use an imperative, as in the instruction êhsa:wa:k ‘you will sift it’, uttered during a cooking class (16.6). In some contexts it implies capability: êgéyé’he’t ‘I will learn it’ may have the force of ‘I can learn it’.

3.3.2.3 The hypothetical prefix. The hypothetical prefix expresses a speaker’s judgment that the occurrence of an event is only a possibility, neither an established fact nor probable. Depending on the context, this prefix can be translated with English ‘might’ or ‘should’, as with a:ge:ge’ ‘I might see it’ or ‘I should see it’. The ‘might’ translation is appropriate, for example, in á:hse:ge’ honóhsot ‘you might see his house’. The ‘should’ translation is appropriate after ha’degagö:n ‘it’s necessary’, as in ha’degagö:n ô:saswáhsatö: ‘you should bury it again’.

3.3.3. Forms of the punctual aspect suffix. The most common forms of the punctual suffix are *-t (glottal stop) and *-0 (zero). The glottal stop occurs after a vowel and after a resonant, which is lost with compensatory lengthening of the vowel.

*-.t  *-yêtho- ‘plant’, *-ahtëti- ‘go’, *-en- ‘go somewhere’ (> -e:’)

With some verb bases the glottal stop is accompanied by lengthening of the preceding vowel. Such forms are historically distinct from the compensatory lengthening associated with the loss of a resonant. They are cognate with Onondaga forms that have raised pitch on the last syllable.

*-.t  *-yê-:t ‘set down’, *-hshe-:t ‘chase’, *-ahrötö:-t ‘ask’

There is no overt marking (zero) after an obstruent:

*-.0  *-ashet ‘count’, *-awak ‘sift’, *-htarhahs ‘talk to someone’

A base which itself ends in a glottal stop is followed by the punctual suffix *-t:

*-.t  *-snye-:t ‘speak’, *-ta-:t ‘stand up’, *-sko-:t ‘fall in water’
There is an inchoative suffix (5.5.2) in which the verb base ends with -ë’ before the habitual and stative aspect suffixes (-s and -ôh respectively), but with -ëh before the punctual suffix, where the punctual form is zero.

*-./h  *-stë’/-stëh ‘become heavy’, *-tokë’/tokëh ‘become straight’.

Other, less predictable forms of the punctual suffix include the following:

*.-ë’  *.-hthar-ë’ ‘talk’, *.-hnyot-ë’ ‘stand upright’, *.-ahsaw-ë’ ‘begin’
*.-a’  *.-ô’esh-ë’ ‘please’, *.-hnekehr-ë’ ‘drink’, *.-hwanh-ë’ ‘tie around’
*.-a:’ *.-atehs’-a:’ ‘prepare and related bases such as *-atawhs’-a:’ ‘mature’
*.-h  *.-ye-ë’ ‘wake up’, *.-ahso-ë’ ‘paint’, *.-swahë-ë’ ‘hate’
*.-i’  *.-këhs-i’ ‘rinse’, *.-ka’tsh-i’ ‘take apart’, *.-yëter-i’ ‘learn’

The following punctual suffix forms have been observed with just a few verb bases.

*.-ah  *.-o’sohr-ah ‘cover’, *.-atyërëkw-ah ‘become suddenly aware’
*.-k  *.-atyanô-k ‘poison’, *.-nôhtô-k ‘tire of waiting’, *.-wa’hi-k ‘stutter’
*.-e:’  *.-këhsr-e:’ ‘skim’, *.-sr-e:’ ‘drag’
*.-h  *.-ra’the:’-h ‘persist’

3.3.4. Forms of the modal prefixes

3.3.4.1. Forms of the factual prefix.  The form *wa*- is retained in Seneca before a pronominal prefix that begins with y, and the y is then lost.

wa’e:ge’  ‘she saw it’  (*wa’yekë’)
wa’agwage’  ‘we (ex.pl.agt) saw it’  (*wa’yakwakë’)
wa’éti:ge’  ‘we (in.nonsg.agt) saw her or them’  (*wa’yethikë’)

The form *wa*- results from the loss of the glottal stop before a pronominal prefix beginning with *h, a reflection of the loss of the glottal stop before *h that predated Proto-Northern-Iroquoian. When the result was an intervocalic h, the h was subsequently lost as well.

wa:age’  ‘he saw it’  (*wa’hekë’ > *wahekë’)
wa:digi:ge’  ‘they (m.pl.agt) saw it’  (*wa’hatikë’ > *wahatikë’)
wa:egë’  ‘I saw him’  (*wa’hekë’ > *wahekë’)

The form *o’*- replaced *wa*- before a consonant other than *y or *h.

o’si’  ‘you said it’  (*wa’si’)
o’wadi:yö’  ‘they (f.pl.agt) arrived’  (*wa’watiyö’)

The form *e*- occurs before any inclusive person prefix, as well as before any second person prefix except a second person singular agent. In Proto-Northern-Iroquoian the e was part of the pronominal prefix and the factual form that preceded it was w-. Seneca lost the *w from *we-, leaving an e- that was reinterpreted as the form of the factual.

ehnyádi:wis’a:’  ‘we (in.du) agreed’  (*etnyatrihiwihs’a:’)
edwátgwe:ni’  ‘we (in.pl) won’  (*etwatkweni’)

29
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

3.3.4.2. Forms of the future prefix. The future prefix usually has the form *ë-, as in ége:gë’ ‘I’ll see it’ (3.3.2.2). However, before the pronominal prefixes *ho- (masculine singular patient) and *höti- (masculine nonsingular patient), following the loss of the intervocalic *h, the *ë- is denasalized to *e-. In casual speech the *eo sequence is replaced by *o: (2.10).

eótä:k or ó:tä:k  ‘he’ll be the speaker’  (*ëthotarahk)
ediyá’dage:ha’ or o:diyá’dage:ha’ ‘it will help them’  (*ëhotiya’takenha’)
é:nö’e:sha’ or ó:nö’e:sha’ ‘they’ll be grateful for it’  (*ëhonö’esha’)

A denasalization of ë- to e- also occurs before the pronominal prefix he(y)- (1st singular agent / masculine singular patient), resulting in a long e:-

e:egë’  ‘I’ll see him’  (*ëhekë’)
é:owi’  ‘I’ll tell him’  (*ëhehrori’)
é:yatšo:wi’  ‘I’ll tell about him’  (*ëheyathrori’)

3.3.4.3. Forms of the hypothetical prefix. The most common form of the hypothetical prefix is *aa-, which counts as a sequence of two vowels in the assignment of accents but is realized as a long a:, as in a:ge:gë’ ‘I might or should see it’ (3.3.2.3). However, in the environments where the factual form is *ë- (before an inclusive person prefix, as well as before any second person prefix with the exception of a second person singular agent) the hypothetical appears as *ae-.

gwisdë’ aesni’ ‘you (2nd dual agent) should say something’(*aesni’)
aéswë:nëhsayëthakahk ‘you (2nd plural agent) should shoulder it’ (*aeswënhënsayëthakahk)
da’äoh nekoh àëdëwë’jo:da’k  ‘we (in.pl.agt) can’t continue to stay here’  (*aëtwë’trota’k)

3.4. The pronominal prefixes

3.4.1. Introduction. In all the Northern Iroquoian languages the pronominal prefix systems have provided one of the joys and challenges of linguistic work. They were first described in detail for Oneida by Lounsbury (1953), and his description applies with minor changes to all the languages. Because a few of the prefixes have forms that are ambiguous, the question of how many pronominal prefixes each language has depends on how they are counted. Seneca has 58 different prefix forms but six of them perform two different functions, and thus the total set of prefix functions amounts to 64. The entire set is shown in Table 3.1, with agent meanings in separate rows, patient meanings in separate columns, and transitive meanings at the intersections of the rows and columns. Those with the same form but different functions are numbered 7, 7a, 8, 8a, 20, 20a, 31, 31a, 32, 32a, and 44, 44a.

3.4.2. Neuter singular agents and patients. A neuter singular agent is overtly marked (with the forms numbered 15 in the lower left cell of Table 3.1) only when it is not combined with a human patient. If a human patient is also present, a neuter singular agent is not overtly marked. For example, ‘it saw her’ is expressed as wa’ago:geh’
(*wa’yakokë’) with the feminine singular patient prefix *-yako- ‘her’ and no overt marking of ‘it’. Similarly, a neuter singular patient is overtly marked (with the forms numbered 24 in the upper right cell) when it is not combined with a human agent. If a human agent is also present, a neuter singular patient is not overtly marked. For example, ‘he planted it’ is expressed as wá:yëto’ (*wa’hayëtho’) with the masculine singular agent prefix *ha- ‘he’ and no marking of ‘it’. In fact, wá:yëto’ is ambiguous in the sense that it can mean either ‘he planted it’ (with a neuter singular patient) or simply ‘he planted’ (an intransitive statement without a patient). This kind of ambiguity is common in Northern Iroquoian verbs.

3.4.3. Ambiguity of the feminine singular forms. The feminine singular forms in 12 (for an agent) and 22 (for a patient) are ambiguous in another way. As the labels suggest, they may refer to a single female: ‘she’ or ‘her’. But they may also refer to unidentified or nonspecific people in general, where they can be translated ‘one’, ‘people’, or ‘they’ in a nonspecific sense. The nonspecific meaning is probably the older of the two, and the form may be remotely cognate with a form yi- that functions in a similar way in the Caddo language (Chafe 1990). During the development of third person gender in the Northern Iroquoian languages the form for a nonspecific referent was extended to feminine singular.

3.4.4. Relics of a feminine-zoic category. The Mohawk, Oneida, and Onondaga languages have two distinct ways of referring to one female. For a feminine singular agent they may use ye- and the other variants in 12, or they may use ka- and the other variants in 15. In describing those languages linguists have followed Lounsbury in labeling the first option feminine-indefinite because of the ambiguity between feminine and nonspecific described in 3.4.3. The second option has been labeled feminine-zoic because of an ambiguity between feminine and nonhuman animate. The last category is usually limited to nonhuman animals (hence the term ‘zoic’), although it may include growing plants.

The choice between the feminine-indefinite and feminine-zoic prefixes in Mohawk, Oneida, and Onondaga is governed by a complex set of considerations that may vary somewhat from one language to another and even from one speaker to another. The following summary was provided by Clifford Abbott, writing of Oneida: The feminine-indefinite prefix ‘is used to convey the impression that the female referred to is small, graceful, dainty, or petite,’ and the feminine-zoic prefix ‘is used to convey the impression the female is large, awkward, or aggressive’ (Abbott 1984).

In general, Seneca does not make such a distinction but relies on the feminine-indefinite forms to refer to one female. There are, however, three pieces of evidence suggesting that Seneca did distinguish feminine-zoic from feminine-indefinite at an earlier time, abandoning that distinction more recently in favor of an exclusive use of the feminine-indefinite forms. Outside of the singular, Seneca agrees with the other languages in conflating feminine and nonhuman animate references (see prefixes 13, 14, and 23).

3.4.4.1. Women’s names. A number of women’s names contain the otherwise nonhuman singular prefix ga- (*ka-), suggesting that it once also meant ‘she’ in the ‘feminine-zoic’ category. For example:

Gayë’gwagwas ‘it (or she) gets tobacco’  (*kayë’kwakwahs)
Ganyóhšo: ‘it (or she) is sitting’  (*kanyohsyot)
3.4.4.2. The pronominal prefix göwö- (*köwa-). This prefix is not productive in contemporary Seneca and hence is not included in Table 3.1, but it seems earlier to have combined an agent meaning ‘she or they’ with a feminine-zoic singular patient. It was thus parallel to höwö- (*höwa-), which combines ‘she or they’ with a masculine singular patient. It may be the only place in Seneca where ‘feminine-zoic’ is marked with a unique form. It too is found in women’s names, where it is recognized as archaic.

Göwö'nöe’s ‘she or they like her (feminine-zoic)’ (*köwanöhwe’s)
Göwö:ni:nöh ‘she or they buy it from her (feminine-zoic)’ (*köwahninöh)
Göwö:ho:döö ‘she or they have closed the door on her (feminine-zoic)’ (*köwanhotö’)
De'göwöya:s ‘she (feminine-zoic) has no name’ (*te’köwayas)

The same archaic flavor is recognized with the nonsingular version göwöti- (*kōwati-).

göwö:dnöe’s ‘she or they like them (feminine-zoic)’ (*kōwatinöhwe’s)

3.4.4.3. Irregular kinship terms. A few kinship terms that appear irregular within the present system can be explained as relics of the feminine-zoic category:

onó’ëh ‘her mother’, literally ‘it (feminine-zoic) is mother to it (feminine-zoic)’ (*onó’ëh)
o:hak ‘her aunt’, literally ‘it (feminine-zoic) is aunt to it (feminine-zoic)’ (*onhahk)
ohso:t ‘her grandmother’, literally ‘it (feminine-zoic) is grandparent to it (feminine-zoic)’ (*ohso:)

3.4.4.4. Summary of feminine-zoic relics. In brief, these several pieces of evidence point to an earlier stage of Seneca at which the pronominal prefix system contained two ways of referring to one woman, ways that are preserved in Mohawk, Oneida, and Onondaga, where linguists have labeled them feminine-indefinite and feminine-zoic. Apart from the relics described above, Seneca lacks a feminine-zoic category and now uses only the feminine-indefinite, here labeled simply ‘feminine’, which is ambiguous between the meanings ‘she’ and ‘one’.

3.4.5. Forms of the pronominal prefixes. In Table 3.1 the pronominal prefixes are shown in their reconstructed forms. As usual, the phonological processes described in Chapter 2 must be applied to words containing these prefixes to arrive at modern pronunciations. The following conventions are followed in Table 3.1.

3.4.5.1. Loss of initial segments. The forms (h)s- (6), (w)ak- (16), and (ya)ko- (22) lack the parenthesized segments when these prefixes are initial in a word. It is also the case that a prefix beginning with y loses that y in word-initial position. However, unlike the three examples just given, the loss of initial y is a regular phonological process. There is one conspicuous exception: the forms given for ‘she’ in 12 do not lose their initial y. The immunity of that y to initial loss is shown by underlining it.

The inclusion of (ö) in square brackets in 16 refers to a particular and exceptional morphemic environment. When the factual prefix *wa*- is followed by the first person
singu lar pa tient prefix *wak- or *wake-, the sequence *wa’wa is replaced by *ö. For example, for the meaning ‘it saw me’ one might expect *wa’wakekë’, but in fact the form is *ökekë’ (> öge:ge’). This change appears to have preceded the breakup of the Northern Iroquoian languages, since it is reflected in all of them.

### 3.4.5.2. Forms conditioned by the following environment.

The final portion of a pronominal prefix varies in ways determined by the initial portion of the base that follows it. The superscripts in Table 3.1 refer to these environments as follows.

- **V** before a vowel (*a, ä, e, ê, i, o, ö, u)
- **CV** before a consonant (*h, k, n, r, s, t, ts, w, y, ’) that is followed by a vowel
- **RV** before a resonant (*n, r, w, y) that is followed by a vowel
- **tV** before *t followed by a vowel
- **hV** before *h or *hR followed by a vowel
- **a** before *a or *ä
- **e** before *e or *ë
- **o** before *o or *ö

Italicized letters show sounds that are lost:

- **a** before *a, which is lost
- **e** before *e, which is lost

The following merge into a different sound:

- **i** before *i, which is lost
- **y** before *y, which is lost
- **y** y which is not lost in word-initial position

For example, the feminine singular agent prefix (12 in the table) is listed as:

* ye- before a consonant or *i, with loss of i
  - ye:vë:twas ‘she plants’ (*ye-yëthwa:hs)
  - ye’jö’ ‘she stays, dwells’ (*ye’tro’ < *ye-i’tro’)

* yak- before *o or *ö
  - yagö:ge:yö’s ‘she’s husking it’ (*yak-okëyö’s)
  - yagö:gewe: ‘woman’ (*yak-ökweh)

* yö- before *a, with loss of a
  - yö:wë:sa ‘she’s sifting it’ (*yöwë:ks < *yö-awë:ks)

* yë- before *e or *ö, with loss of *e or ö
  - i:yë’s ‘she’s around’ (*i-yë’s < *i-e’s)

The neuter singular agent prefix (15 in the table) is listed as:

* ka- before a consonant
  - gahö:dö’ ‘the door is closed’ (*ka-nhotö’)

* kë- before i, where *ai > *ë
  - gé:jö’ ‘it stays, dwells’ (*kë’tro’ < *ka-i’tro’)

* w- before a, e, or ö
  - wa:te:ge’ ‘it’s bad’ (*w-ahetëkë’)
  - i:we:s ‘it’s around’ (*i-we’s)

* y- before *o or *ö
i:yö’ ‘it’s in the water’ (*i-y-o’)
yöishágës ‘bad breath’ (*y-örishrakrëhs)

The transitive prefix that combines a first person exclusive dual agent with a masculine singular patient (26 in the table) is listed as:

*shakni- before a consonant
  o’sháknì:gë’ ‘we (ex.du) saw him’ (*wa’-shakni-kë’)

*shakn- before *i, *e, *ë, *o, or *ö
  o’sha:knö’ ‘we (ex.du) gave it to him’ (*wa’-shakn-ö’)

*shaky- before *a
  o’shágyatga’ ‘we (ex.du) released him’ (*wa’-shaky-atka’)

The transitive prefix that combines a first person exclusive plural agent with a masculine singular patient (27 in the table) is listed as:

*shakwa- before a consonant:
  o’shagwagë’ ‘we (ex.pl) saw him’ (*wa’-shakwa-kë’)

*shakwë- before *i, where *ai > ë
  o’shagwë:dë’ ‘we (ex.pl) pitied him’ (*wa’-shakwë-tër’ < *wa’-shakwa-itër’)

*shakw- before *a, *e, or *ë
  o’shágwatga’ ‘we (ex.pl) released him’ (*wa’-shakwa-tka’)

*shaky- before *o or *ö
  o’sha:gyö’ ‘we (ex.pl) gave it to him’ (*wa’-shaky-ö’)
4. VERB MORPHOLOGY PART 2: 
THE PREPRONOMINAL PREFIXES

4.1. Introduction

Section 3.3 described the three modal prefixes that occur with the punctual aspect and are positioned before a pronominal prefix. A pronominal prefix may also be preceded by one or more other prefixes from a set labeled prepronominal. (Lounsbury 1953 included the modal prefixes under this term). Figure 4.1 outlines the structure of a verb that has been expanded in this way. One or more of these prepronominal prefixes may occur with or without the accompaniment of a modal prefix. When both are present, the ordering of the prepronominal prefix or prefixes relative to the modal prefix varies, depending on the specific prefixes involved.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>prepronominal prefix</th>
<th>modal prefix (with punctual aspect)</th>
<th>pronominal prefix</th>
<th>verb base</th>
<th>aspect suffix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>repetitive</td>
<td>factual</td>
<td>agent</td>
<td>root or</td>
<td>habitual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cislocative</td>
<td>future</td>
<td>patient</td>
<td>expanded</td>
<td>stative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>duplicative</td>
<td>hypothetical</td>
<td>transitive</td>
<td>base</td>
<td>punctual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>partitive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>translocative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>coincident</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>contrastive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>negative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 4.1. Verb structure with prepronominal prefixes

There are eight prepronominal prefixes, named as shown in Figure 4.1. Most have several uses. Some of these uses are productive, appearing with many verb bases whenever their meanings are appropriate. However, some verb bases require the presence of a specific prepronominal prefix, sometimes in a lexicalized construction with a specialized meaning. Table 4.1 shows the reconstructed forms of these prefixes in the absence of a modal prefix, and Table 4.2 shows the forms of their combinations with the three modal prefixes.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>negative</th>
<th>coincident</th>
<th>translocative</th>
<th>partitive</th>
<th>duplicative</th>
<th>repetitive</th>
<th>cislocative</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>

Figure 4.2. Order of the prepronominal prefixes

As can be seen in Table 4.2, the repetitive and cislocative prefixes *s- and *t- are positioned after the future prefix *ë- in *ês- and *ët-, but before the factual prefix *a- in *sa- and *ta-. With the hypothetical prefix the repetitive and cislocative prefixes occur within the longer sequences *öösa- and *ööta-. More of these combinations are set forth in Table 4.2.
### Table 4.1. Prepronominal Prefixes without Modal Prefixes (Reconstructed Forms)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Prefix Type</th>
<th>Forms</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Repetitive</td>
<td>s- tś- (y), lśi- t- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cislocative</td>
<td>t- ti- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duplicative</td>
<td>te-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partitive</td>
<td>ni-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translocative</td>
<td>he-</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duplicative &amp; repetitive</td>
<td>tes- tś- (y), tśi- t- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Duplicative &amp; cislocative</td>
<td>tē- tēi- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partitive &amp; repetitive</td>
<td>nī- nīs- (y) nīi- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partitive &amp; cislocative</td>
<td>nī- nīi- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partitive &amp; duplicative</td>
<td>na’ī- termi- (y) na’īs- termi- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partitive, duplicative, &amp; repetitive</td>
<td>na’ī- termi- (y) termi- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Partitive, duplicative, &amp; cislocative</td>
<td>na’ī- termi- na’īs- termi- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translocative &amp; repetitive</td>
<td>hē- hēs- (y), hēs- tē- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translocative &amp; duplicative</td>
<td>ha’ī- termi- (y) termi- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translocative, duplicative, &amp; repetitive</td>
<td>ha’ī- termi- termi- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translocative &amp; partitive</td>
<td>hni- termi- (y) hni- t- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translocative, partitive, &amp; repetitive</td>
<td>hni- termi- (y) termi- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Translocative, partitive, duplicative, &amp; repetitive</td>
<td>hni- termi- termi- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coincident</td>
<td>tsh- termi- (y) tsh- t- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Coincident &amp; other prepronominal prefixes</td>
<td>Replace partitive n with tsh</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrastive</td>
<td>th- termi- (y) th- t- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Contrastive &amp; other prepronominal prefixes</td>
<td>Replace partitive n with th</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative</td>
<td>te’- termi- (y) te’- t- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative &amp; repetitive</td>
<td>te’- s termi- (y) te’- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative &amp; cislocative</td>
<td>te’- t- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative &amp; duplicative</td>
<td>te’- termi- s</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Negative &amp; translocative</td>
<td>the’- termi- s</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

### Key to environments

(y) before y with loss of y
2 before inclusive or second person, except second person singular agent
s before s otherwise
(h) before h otherwise
(C) before a consonant other than y or h
Table 4.2. Prepronominal and Modal Prefix Combinations (Reconstructed Forms)

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>With factual</th>
<th>With future</th>
<th>With hypothetical</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td><strong>Modals alone</strong></td>
<td>wa’-γ, ơ’-γ, e-2</td>
<td>ē-</td>
<td>aa- ae-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Repetitive</strong></td>
<td>sa- se-2</td>
<td>ēs- ēts-γ, ētš-2 ēt-</td>
<td>ōös- ōöse-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Cislocative</strong></td>
<td>ta- te-2</td>
<td>ēt- ētī-2</td>
<td>ōōta- ōōte-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Duplicate</strong></td>
<td>o’- o’ti-2</td>
<td>tē-</td>
<td>taa- tae-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Partitive</strong></td>
<td>na’- na-نى ne-2</td>
<td>nē-</td>
<td>naa- nae-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Translocative</strong></td>
<td>hwa’- ho’-γ, he-2</td>
<td>hē-</td>
<td>haa- hae-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Duplicate &amp; repetitive</strong></td>
<td>tōsa- tōse-2</td>
<td>tēs- tēts-γ, tēts-2 tēt-</td>
<td>tōōsa- tōōse-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Duplicate &amp; cislocative</strong></td>
<td>tōta- tōte-2</td>
<td>tēt- tēti-2</td>
<td>tōōta- tōōte-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Partitive &amp; repetitive</strong></td>
<td>nōsa- nōse-2</td>
<td>nēs- nēts-γ, nēts-2 nēt-</td>
<td>nōōsa- nōōse-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Partitive &amp; cislocative</strong></td>
<td>nōta- nōte-2</td>
<td>nēt- nēti-2</td>
<td>nōōta- nōōte-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Partitive &amp; duplicative</strong></td>
<td>na’t- na’ti-2</td>
<td>na’tē-</td>
<td>na’taa- na’tae-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Partitive, duplicative, &amp; repetitive</strong></td>
<td>na’tōsa- na’tōse-2</td>
<td>na’tēs- na’tēts-γ, na’tēts-2 na’tēt-</td>
<td>na’tōōsa- na’tōōse-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Partitive, duplicative, &amp; cislocative</strong></td>
<td>na’tōta- na’tōte-2</td>
<td>na’tēt- na’tēti-2</td>
<td>na’tōōta- na’tōōte-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Translocative &amp; repetitive</strong></td>
<td>hōsa- hōse-2</td>
<td>hēs- hēts-γ, hēts-2 hēt-</td>
<td>hōōsa- hōōse-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Translocative &amp; duplicative</strong></td>
<td>ho’- ho’ti-2</td>
<td>ha’tē-</td>
<td>ha’taa- ha’tae-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Translocative, duplicative &amp; repetitive</strong></td>
<td>ho’tōsa- ho’tōse-2</td>
<td>ha’tēs- ha’tēts-γ, ha’tēts-2 ha’tēt-</td>
<td>ho’tōōsa- ho’tōōse-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Translocative &amp; partitive</strong></td>
<td>hna’- hna-نى hne-2</td>
<td>hē-</td>
<td>hnaa- hnae-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Translocative, partitive, &amp; repetitive</strong></td>
<td>hōns- hōns-γ, hōns-2 hōnt-</td>
<td>hōōs- hōōse-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Translocative, partitive, &amp; duplicative</strong></td>
<td>hna’t- hna’ti-2</td>
<td>hna’tē-</td>
<td>hna’taa- hna’tae-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Translocative, partitive, duplicative, &amp; repetitive</strong></td>
<td>hna’tōsa- hna’tōse-2</td>
<td>hna’tēs- hna’tēts-γ, hna’tēts-2 hna’tēt-</td>
<td>hna’tōōsa- hna’tōōse-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Coincident</strong></td>
<td>tsha’- tshe-2</td>
<td>tshē-</td>
<td>tshaa- tshaie-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Coincident &amp; other prepronominal prefixes</strong></td>
<td>Replace partitive n with tsh</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Contrastive</strong></td>
<td>tha’- the-2</td>
<td>thē-</td>
<td>thaa- thae-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Contrastive &amp; other prepronominal prefixes</strong></td>
<td>Replace partitive n with th</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Negative</strong></td>
<td>te’a- te’e-2</td>
<td></td>
<td>te’aa- te’ae-2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Negative &amp; repetitive</strong></td>
<td>te’ōsa- te’ōse-2</td>
<td>See 4.9.3</td>
<td>te’ōōsa</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td><strong>Negative &amp; cislocative</strong></td>
<td>te’ōta-</td>
<td></td>
<td>te’ōōta</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

The prepronominal prefixes do not form a homogeneous set, and evidently they were added to the Seneca morphological template at different times in the history of the language, and from different sources. Figure 4.2 partially reflects this historical ordering to the extent that it can be inferred from their closeness to the following pronominal prefix. The hypothesized earliest prefixes, the repetitive and cislocative, occur on the far right. Their uses and forms are discussed in 4.2 and 4.3, followed by the duplicative (4.4),
translocative (4.5), and partitive (4.6). The coincident (4.7) and contrastive (4.8) prefixes are similar in form and position, but their functions are quite different. Discussion of the negative prefix (4.9) leads to a more general discussion of negation in Seneca, which is expressed in partially unique ways. Mithun (1995a) compared negation and its relation to the other prepronominal prefixes across the entire Iroquoian family.

4.2. The repetitive prefix

4.2.1. Uses of the repetitive prefix. The several meanings associated with the repetitive prefix (Lounsbury’s iterative) share a focus on one particular instance within a set of events, states, people, or objects. Often the repetitive can be translated ‘again’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seneca</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shodëkönih ‘he’s eating again’</td>
<td>(*shotekhonih:)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shënödöh ‘they say it again’</td>
<td>(*shenatöh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shóáhdöh ‘he has passed by again’</td>
<td>(*shohrahtöh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sgadëhsa’öh ‘I’m ready again’</td>
<td>(*skatehsa’öh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sgadögwe’ta ‘I’m feeling better again’</td>
<td>(*skatokwetha’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sgadatëwata’ta ‘I repent’, literally ‘I punish myself again’</td>
<td>(*skatatewaththa’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dzögwätsö:wih ‘we’re talking about it again’</td>
<td>(*syökwarthori:h)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In other cases a more appropriate translation is ‘back’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seneca</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>shokdö:h ‘he has come back’</td>
<td>(*shohktö:h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shóiháksö:h ‘he has gone back to look for it’</td>
<td>(*shoihsakhö:h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sgënhödöönyöh ‘I’m thinking back’</td>
<td>(*skënhöhtönyööh)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ishe ‘he walked back’</td>
<td>(*ishe’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shadiawi ‘they’re carrying it back’</td>
<td>(*shatihawi’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shënhöta:ñe ‘they’re walking back’</td>
<td>(*shënhatheñe’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shonëhödëjö:jje ‘they’re going back’</td>
<td>(*shonahitëyöhatye’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dzodöööh ‘it has changed back’</td>
<td>(*syöto’ööh)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

In still other cases the best translation is ‘still’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seneca</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sgöhe ‘I’m still alive’</td>
<td>(*sköhe’)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swagadawë:nye:h ‘I’m still moving about’</td>
<td>(*swakatawënye:h)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sho’dáië:h ‘he’s still warm’</td>
<td>(*sho’achë:)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

With the verb root *-t- the repetitive is used in counting ‘one’, or to express the idea of ‘another one’, or sometimes ‘the same one’.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Seneca</th>
<th>Translation</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>sga:d ‘one’</td>
<td>(*skat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sgagwënishö:d ‘one cent’</td>
<td>(*skakwënishrat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sga:wisda:d ‘one dollar’</td>
<td>(*skakwahtstat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sgagëhdö:d ‘one layer’</td>
<td>(*skakëhtarat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dzënyöda:d ‘one finger’</td>
<td>(*syönyat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sgaga:ad ‘one story’</td>
<td>(*skakarat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>swahsöda:d ‘one night’</td>
<td>(*swahteñrat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>sgëşöshö:d ‘one box, a thousand’</td>
<td>(*skahëshrat)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dzëya’da:d ‘one woman, another woman, the same woman’</td>
<td>(*syeya’at)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>shaya’da:d ‘one man, another man, the same man’</td>
<td>(*shaya’at)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>dzögwe’dä:d ‘one person, another person, the same person’</td>
<td>(*tsököwe’at)</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

shadiya’da:d ‘the other ones, the same ones’

(*shatiya’tat)

The repetitive is obligatory with the verb root -ati- ‘be on the other side’.

swa:dih ‘on the other side’

(*swatih)

gsanödadih ‘on the other side of the town’

(*skanötatihi)

shagöhsadih ‘on the other side of his face’

(*shaköhsatihi)

sgëhö:dih ‘on the other side of the creek’

(*skëyhatih)

sgadzëödih ‘on the other side of the fire’

(*skatsëhatih)

The repetitive also occurs in certain proper names as well as the names of animals with the meaning ‘one characterized by, the one who, or the …-ed one’.

Shajenöwö’s ‘the one who helps’ (a Seneca chief’s title)

(*shatåna’wä’s)

Shogë’dëwò:wa’ ‘the one with a big forehead’ (a Seneca chief’s title)

(*shokë’tsowa’)

Sganödaiyo’ ‘Handsome Lake, the beautiful lake one’

(a Seneca chief’s title and the name of the Seneca prophet)

(*skanötariyo’)

Tsagáöhe:das ‘Jesus, the one who brings them back to life’

(*tshakaönhetahs)

shonë:ned ‘sub-chief, vice-president, the one who is next in line’

(*shóna’net)

dzagyöö:di:hi ‘possum, the smiling one’

(*syaköyöti:h)

sgëdze:s ‘pike (Esox sp), the long fish’

(*skëtsës)

4.2.2. Forms of the repetitive prefix. Reconstructed forms of the repetitive prefix, including its combinations with other prepronominal prefixes and with the three modal prefixes, are shown in Tables 4.1 and 4.2.

The most common form of the repetitive is *s-; see numerous examples above. Certain other forms are arbitrarily determined by specific morphemic environments. For the most part the cognates of these forms were already present in Proto-Northern-Iroquoian.

The form *ts- occurs before a pronominal prefix beginning with y, and the y is lost. In other words, where one might expect *sy, in this particular combination the result is *ts (

 đích ke’ ‘she’s running back’

(cf. yëchë:ke’ ‘she’s running’) *tseta:ke’

dzögwë:go’h ‘we’re eating it again’

(cf. *ögwë:go’h ‘we’re eating it’) *tsökwaköh

The form *tsi- (> jì-) occurs before an inclusive or second person pronominal prefix other than a second person singular agent:

jidwë’s ‘we’re still around’

(cf. ìdwe’s ‘we’re around’)

*jidwë’s (*tseitwe’s)
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

jidwadawë:nye:h ‘we’re still moving about’ (*tsitwatawë:nye:h)
(cf. dedwadawë:nye:h ‘we’re moving about’, where the duplicative *te- (> de-)
is otherwise required by this base)

The form *t- occurs before a pronominal prefix beginning with s, except for the second
person dual and plural prefixes, where the repetitive is *tsi- as described just above:

tsōgwā:owih ‘he tells us again’ (*tshōkwahrorih)
tsetgwa:dih ‘your left side’ (*tshetkwatih)

4.3. The cislocative prefix

4.3.1. Uses of the cislocative prefix. In verbs of directed motion the cislocative
expresses motion toward the speaker or a third person.

ejeda:ke’ ‘she’s running this way’ (*tyetakhe’)
toyö:h ‘he has come in’ (*thoyö:h)
tonöhdëjö:h ‘they have come’ (*thonahtëtyö:h)
dwagyö’döh ‘I’ve brought it in’ (*twakyö’töh)
dwage:hdöh ‘I’ve come from there’ (*twake:htöh)
tanëshade’ ‘his arm is extended in this direction’ (*thanëshate’)

In verbs expressing a state or a static event the cislocative expresses a simple location.
‘there, where … is’.

tanö:ge’ ‘where he lives’ (*thanakre’)
tōi’de’ ‘where he’s working’ (*thorìho’te’)
tsi’jö ‘where you stay’ (*tsi’trö’)
tganödayë’ ‘in the town, where the town is’ (*tkanatayë’)
tgā:hgwitgë’s ‘in the east, where the sun emerges’ (*tkarahkwitkë’s)
tōwōhsadö ‘they have buried him there’ (*thōwahsatö’)
tē:ne’s ‘where they are around, are present’ (*thëne’s)
tahsa:ha’ ‘he begins there’ (*thahsawha’)

The cislocative is often found in place names.

Ta:nōwōde’ ‘Tonawanda Reservation, where he’s in the rapids’
(*thahnawate’)
Tganōdase:’ ‘Newtown (section of the Cattaraugus Reservation),
where there’s a new town’
(*tkanatase:’)
Tganōdā:gwëh ‘Canandaigua, NY, where there’s a chosen town’
(*tkanatarakwëh)
Tganō:do’ ‘New York City, where there’s a town in the water’
(*tkanato’)
Tganōdayë’go:wah ‘Philadelphia, where the big city is’
(*tkanatayë’kowa:h)
Tgēdzō:a’ ‘Kinzua, PA, where there’s a fish on the end of a stick’
(*tkētsoha’)
Dwasgo’ ‘Auburn, NY, where there’s a bridge’
(*twasko’)
With certain verbs that allow degrees of a property or of the intensity of an event, the cislocative may indicate the highest degree: ‘the most’. This usage functions as an alternative to the usages described above.

[tagéhjih ‘he’s the oldest’ or ‘the old one there’ (*thakéhtsih)]
[tgowanës ‘the biggest ones’ or ‘the big ones there’ (*tkowanëhs)]
[tgakwåëtgë ‘it’s the worst food’ or ‘bad food there’ (*kakhwahetkë’)]
[tôgwë’diyóh: ‘he’s the nicest man’ or ‘nice man there’ (*thôkwe’ti:yo:h)]
[tênôhdô: ‘he’s the boss, he’s the most in control’ or ‘he’s in control there’ (*thênôhètôhá’)]

The cislocative occurs obligatorily with certain verb bases.

with ‘-atyërëht- ‘be first’:
jojééhèdéh ‘it’s first’ (*tyotyerëhtôh)
with ‘-nhe- ‘stick up for’:
jöki:heh ‘they’re sticking up for us’ (*työkhinhe:h)
with ‘-atehgarakte- ‘growl, show anger’
dwagéhgä: ‘it growls’ (*twatehgarakts)
with ‘-yeri- ‘be proper, right’:
tgaye:i ‘in fact’ (*tkayeri)

The cislocative is also found in certain lexicalized combinations with unique meanings.

with -snye- ‘speak’ the meaning is ‘speak up’:
êtgéšnye’ôh ‘I’ll speak up’ (*êtkesnye’t)
(cf. Œgéšnye’t ‘I’ll speak’)
with -erh(e)- ‘think, want’ the meaning is ‘expect’:
itge:h ‘I expect it’ (*itke:h)
(cf. i:ge:h ‘I want it’)
with -yehst- ‘mix’ the meaning is ‘give, contribute’:
dwagyésdôh ‘I’ve contributed’ (*twakyehstôh)
(cf., with the duplicative prefix, dewágyesdôh ‘I’ve mixed it in’)

4.3.2. Forms of the cislocative prefix. Reconstructed forms of the cislocative prefix, including its combinations with other prepronominal prefixes and with the three modal prefixes, are shown in Tables 4.1 and 4.2.

In the absence of a modal prefix, the most common form of the cislocative is *t- (> t- or d-); see numerous examples above. However, the form *ti- (> di- ) occurs before inclusive and second person pronominal prefixes other than a second person singular agent.

disánôhso:d ‘where your house is’ (*tisanôhso:t)
disátôdë’ôh ‘where you have gotten to hear it’ (*tisathôtë’ôh)
diswáshyènôh ‘you (pl) have spoken up’ (*tiswasnye’ôh)

With the future prefix the cislocative *t- follows the future è in the form *ët- (> ët- or ëtôd-).
**A Grammar of the Seneca Language**

ëdwö:tis ‘it will move this way’
ëjagwagwà: ‘we (ex.du) will go and get it there’

This combination takes the form *ëti- (> ëdi-)* before an inclusive or second person pronominal prefix, with the exception of a second person singular agent:

ëdi:swe’ ‘you (pl) will come’
ëdidwatšo:wi’ ‘we (in.pl) will talk about it here’

The cislocative combines with the hypothetical prefix in the form *ööta-.

ö:dayagwajë: ‘we (ex.pl) sat down there’
dawátgë’ :’ ‘it might appear there’
dayëya’dö:je’ ‘she’s flying this way’

This combination takes the form *te- (> de-)* before an inclusive or second person pronominal prefix, with the exception of a second person singular agent.

dedwa:jë: ‘we (in.pl) sat down there’
desni:yes ‘you (du) contributed’
desn’ígö:hëh ‘you (du) forgot it’

4.4. The duplicative prefix

4.4.1. Uses of the duplicative prefix. Of all the prepronominal prefixes the duplicative has the greatest variety of uses. In enumeration it is present when there are two of something, hence Lounsbury’s term dualic. Often the verb root in such cases is *-ke- ‘be a certain number of’.

degánöhsa:ge:h ‘two houses’
degátwisda:ge:h ‘two dollars, two cups’
deyögwe’da:ge:h ‘two people’
degáksa’dakëh ‘two children’
dewáhshöda:ge:h ‘two nights’
deyöt’ëohdage:h ‘two plants’
deyöhsohwage:h ‘two colors’
deyöiwa:ge:h ‘two rituals’

decniksa’ä:h ‘two (male) children’
dekniksa’ä:h ‘two (female) children’
dewäshë:h ‘twenty’, *literally* ‘two tens’
dewë’nya’e:h ‘two hundred’, *literally* ‘two strikes of the hand’

It is also used with other verb roots or bases in counting two.

decniksa’ä:h ‘two (male) children’
dekniksa’ä:h ‘two (female) children’
dewäshë:h ‘twenty’, *literally* ‘two tens’
dewë’nya’e:h ‘two hundred’,
dewé’nisga:ö¨ ‘bicycle’ literally ‘two wheels’  (*tewé’nisgarö¨*)
dewágya’göh ‘I’ve broken or cut it in two’  (*tewakya’köh*)
cf. agyá’göh ‘I’ve broken or cut it’  (*wakya’köh*)

Some items with the duplicative have a meaning that is intrinsically dual.

de:nígëh ‘they are twins (male)’  (*tehnikëh*)
dekni:gëh ‘they are twins (female)’  (*tehnuyahshëh*)
do:nödögëhdöh ‘they are opponents’  (*tehontaköhtöh*)
dewáge’sgwata: ‘my testicles’,  (*tewake’skwara’t*)
literally ‘two stones’

Some actions and states typically involve two agents, but the duplicative continues to be used even when the number is larger than two.

deyádëi’s ‘they (dual) meet’  (*tehyatra’s*)
but also dë:nödëi’s ‘they (plural) meet’  (*tehénatra’s*)
dejá:dön ‘let’s (dual) eat together’  (*tehyatöt*)
but also dedwa:döön ‘let’s (plural) eat together’  (*tehyatytöh*)
dejadögëta¨ ‘they (dual) oppose each other’  (*tehyatökëhthë*)
but also dë:nödögëta¨ ‘they (plural) oppose each other’  (*tehênatökëhthë*)
deyada:djenöös ‘they (dual) wrestle’  (*tehyatatöynöös*)
but also dë:nödaja:djenöös ‘they (plural) wrestle’  (*tehênatatöynöös*)
deyagyadë:nö:de¨: ‘we (dual) are siblings,
my brother or sister’  (*teyakyatëhnadre’*)
but also deyagywadë:nö:de¨: ‘we (plural) are siblings, my brothers and sisters’  (*teyakwatëhnadre’*)

The duplicative is obligatory with many verb bases whose meanings involve a change from one state to another.

deyóhdenyö:h ‘it has changed from one state to another’  (*teyohtenyö:h*)
dewáhdá:ta¨ ‘it alternates’  (*tewahthi’a’töh*)
degáyayia:ya’s ‘it crosses over it (e.g., a bridge over a river)’  (*tekaya’ya’s*)
dewagë:hso:öh ‘I’ve put my shoes on’  (*tewakërahsoröh*)
deyoshá’kdööh ‘it’s crooked, bent’  (*teyoshë’kto’h*)
deyóhdagâ’wëh ‘it has opened’  (*teyohtakara’wëh*)
dewa:de¨ ‘it’s separated’  (*tewatëre*)
deyódaha¨: ‘it’s in confusion, disarray’  (*teyotarha’*)
desawënye:h ‘stir it!’  (*tesawënye:h*)
dega:dëh ‘it flies, airplane’  (*tekatëh*)

Other bases require the duplicative although the semantic motivation is less obvious.

deyágohsë:twëh ‘she’s crying’  (*teyakosëthwëh*)
deyodi:yö:n ‘it’s stretched’  (*teyotiyö*)
deyágotgwëh ‘she’s dancing’  (*teyakotgwëh*)
dö:döëdzo:nh ‘he wants it, needs it’  (*tehotöhwësënh*)
The duplicative may also be added optionally whenever there is a dual pronominal prefix. This usage appears to have become increasingly common in recent years.

**wa’ákniswáeh** or **o’jákniswáeh** ‘we (ex.du) didn’t like it’

(*wa’yakniswahêh) or (*wa’tyakniswahêh)

**4.4.1. Word-internal borrowing from English.** Recent years have seen the rise of a construction in which an English verb functions as the root of a Seneca verb, surrounded by Seneca affixes. The basic structure of such words is shown in Figure 4.2. Within such a word there is a switch from Seneca to English phonetics, and then a switch back to Seneca phonetics in any following suffixes. In the following examples the English portion, with English spelling, is underlined.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>duplicate prefix</th>
<th>pronominal prefix</th>
<th>middle marker</th>
<th>English verb</th>
<th>various suffixes</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>dewagaderetiredöh</td>
<td>‘I’ve retired’</td>
<td></td>
<td>(*tewakateretiredöh)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>desadetápedöh</td>
<td>‘you’re taping (tape-recording)’</td>
<td>(*tesatetápedöh)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>o’jagwadeshópdanö</td>
<td>‘we (ex.pl) went shopping’</td>
<td>(*wa’tyakwateshopdahna)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

![Figure 4.2. Word-internal borrowing from English](image)

In this construction it is almost always the case that the English verb is directly preceded by the middle voice prefix *-ate* (5.2), and that the pronominal prefix is preceded by the duplicative prepronominal prefix. The middle voice prefix converts the English verb into an a-stem, by far the most common stem type in the language, thereby limiting the choice of the pronominal prefix form to the form that occurs most often. The duplicative prefix is the most commonly occurring prepronominal prefix, so it too limits the form of the pronominal prefix to that which occurs frequently. Thus, the duplicative prefix and the middle voice prefix together sharply reduce the number of pronominal prefix forms from which a speaker needs to choose. It appears that this combination constitutes a kind of folk morphology on which new creations can easily be based. In these words the English verb is always accented, even when it occurs in a syllable that would not be accented if the word were composed entirely of Seneca elements.

**4.4.1.2. The duplicative in place of the repetitive.** The repetitive prefix and the cislocative prefix are mutually exclusive. When there is a need to express the repetitive meaning in the presence of the cislocative, the repetitive function is assumed by the duplicative, with meanings such as ‘again’ and ‘back’.

*dedwadigá:ne:* ‘they (feminine) are looking for it again’ (*tetwati:kahnre:’)
*detgye:i* ‘I’m all right again’ (*tetkyeri*)
*dejago:yö:h* ‘she has come back’ (*tetyakoyö:h*)
*dejagwaga:wes* ‘we row back’ (*tetyakwakawe:h*)
*detgánöhsod* ‘the house back there’ (*tetkanöhsot*)

If, however, the duplicative prefix is required by the verb base in any case, the repetitive meaning need not be present:
detóda’ôh ‘he stood up there’ or ‘he stood up there again’, (*tethota’ôh)
where the base *-ta’- (> -da’-) ‘stand up’ requires the duplicative.

4.4.1.3. The reciprocal construction. As discussed in 5.3.3, the duplicative prefix is
used in combination with the reflexive prefix *-atat- to express a reciprocal meaning.

4.4.2. Forms of the duplicative prefix. Reconstructed forms of the duplicative prefix,
including its combinations with the three modal prefixes and with other prepronominal
prefixes, are shown in Tables 4.1 and 4.2.

When there is no modal prefix the duplicative form is *te- (> de-); see numerous
examples above. With the future prefix, the duplicative *t- precedes it in the combination
*të- (> dë-).

dëg:snye: ‘I’ll take care of you’
dë:nódawéñe: ‘they’ll move about’
dësnyadad:egë ‘they two will see each other’

The duplicative *t- follows the factual prefix in the form *wa’t- (> o’t- or o’d-).

o’tha:ya’k ‘he broke it in two’
o’tgyá:ya’k ‘I crossed over’
o’jéya:ya’k ‘she crossed over’

But this combination takes the form *wa’ti- (> o’di-) before an inclusive or second
person pronominal prefix, with the exception of a second person singular agent.

o’didwadad:egë ‘we (pl in) see each other’
o’diswadad:egë ‘you (pl) see each other’

Duplicative *t- precedes the hypothetical prefix aa- in the form *taa- (> daa-).

da:gek ‘I might pick it up’
da:sdâ’t ‘you might stand up’
da:ada’t ‘he might stand up’

But this combination takes the form *tae- (> dae-) before an inclusive or second person
pronominal prefix, with the exception of a second person singular agent.

daedwadad:egë ‘we (pl in) might see each other’
daeswadad:egë ‘you (pl) might see each other’

4.5. The translocative prefix

4.5.1. Uses of the translocative prefix. With verbs of directed motion the trans-
locative prefix indicates a direction away from the speaker or a third person.

hegeta’ ‘I go there’
hegata’ ‘it went past’
heodiya:gëôh ‘they’ve gone out’

46
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

**hewagegáhdoh** ‘I’m pointing it there’ (*hewakekahtoh*)

With other verbs, whether they express events or states, the translocative prefix indicates a distant location, ‘there, yonder, where something happens’.

**hé:nötgatwas** ‘they keep looking that way’ (*heñenatkathwahs*)
**héódahsédoh** ‘he’s hiding there’ (*hehotahsehtoh*)
**ho:wáhd** ‘it disappeared there’ (*hwa’wahto*)
**heoyanítgé’oh** ‘he has left there’ (*hehoyanitcké’oh*)
**heyágwa:ya:ktay** ‘where we pick berries’ (*heyakwahtaktha*)
**hewádínísdahgwa** ‘where they bark’ (*hewatihilistahkwa*)

The translocative is obligatory with certain verb bases whose meanings involve motion away.

**hewágo’yagoh** ‘I’ve thrown it that way’ (*hewako’yakoh*)
**hodwën’sgo’ya:ktay** ‘it jumped (away)’ (*ho’twëna’sko’ya*)
**hewakaha:** ‘I’ve taken it’ (*hewakha:h*)

Sometimes the translocative indicates that an event or state has reached a limit of some kind.

**heyós’ahdoh** ‘it’s used up’ (*heyohs’ahto*)
**ho’ga:kda’t** ‘it went up to a certain point’ (*hwa’kakta’t*)
**heyónôhsôdahdoh** ‘nights have gone by’ (*heyonôhsôtahtoh*)

The translocative and duplicative together convey a meaning of totality, ‘all’.

**ha’deyô:h** ‘everything, all kinds of things’ (*ha’teyô:h*)
**ha’deganyô’dageh** ‘all kinds of animals’ (*ha’tekanyo’take:h*)
**ha’deyó:do’k** ‘all the way at the end’ (*ha’teyoto’k*)
**ha’dégya’dih** ‘I’m all alone’ (*ha’tekya’ti:h*)
**ha’dedwadahnôôhgwa** ‘we all love one another’ (*ha’tetwatatnorohkwa*)

### 4.5.2. Forms of the translocative prefix.

Reconstructed forms of the translocative prefix, including its combinations with the three modal prefixes and with other prepronominal prefixes, are shown in Table 4.1 and 4.2.

When there is no modal prefix, the translocative appears as *he*-; see examples above.

With modal prefixes the translocative form is usually *h*, preceding the modal prefix.

With the future prefix *ë-*, the translocative *h* precedes it in the combination *hë*-

**hë:yyö** ‘he will arrive there’ (*hëhayó*)
**hëhse:** ‘you will go there’ (*hëhse:n*)
**hëyôtgahdé** ‘she’ll face that way’ (*hëyôtkahdë*)

With the hypothetical prefix *aa-*, the translocative *h* precedes it in the combination *haa-*.

**ha:ge:** ‘I might go there’ (*haaken*)
ha:agë́ ‘he might see there’  (*haahakë́)
ha:gayë́ ‘it might do it there’  (*haakayer’)

This combination takes the form *hae- before an inclusive or second person pronominal prefix, with the exception of a second person singular agent.

háéhne: ‘we (in.du) might go there’  (*haetnen’)
háéswe: ‘you (pl) might go there’  (*haeswen’)

With the factual prefix o’- (*wa’-), the translocative *h precedes it in the combination ho’- (*hwa’-).

ho’wáhsawë́ ‘it began there’  (*hwa’wahsawë́)
ho’wá’së’t ‘it fell there’  (*hwa’wa’së’t)

With the factual prefix *e-, the translocative *h precedes it in the combination *he-.

hedwe: ‘we (in.pl) went there’  (*hetwen’)
hedwájtë:to ‘we (in.pl) took hold of it’  (*hetwatihtë’)

With the factual prefix wa’-, until recently the translocative h- preceded it in the combination hwa’-. Among recent speakers, however, the h has been dropped. As a consequence, in this environment it is no longer possible to distinguish the translocative-factual combination from a simple factual. (Compare the alternative pronunciations of words like *white* in American English.)

(h)wa’a:gwë́ ‘we (ex.pl) went there’  (*hwa’akwen’)
(h)wá:gi:n :k ‘he summoned me’  (*hwa’hakihnök)

4.6. The partitive prefix

4.6.1. Uses of the partitive prefix. The partitive prefix most often indicates the degree of some quantifiable idea—‘how much’, ‘how many’, or ‘to what degree’.

ni:yö:h ‘how much, how many’  (*niyö:h)
niyo:we ‘how far’  (*niyore’)
niýósno:we ‘how fast’  (*niyosnöre’)
niwáknigö:n ‘how much I know’  (*niwakniköht)
niyojiyi:yö:h ‘how good his dog is’  (*niyotsiyiyö:h)

The partitive is used regularly in enumeration when there are three or more of something. In this usage it contrasts with the duplicative prefix, which is used when there are precisely two. Usually the verb root in such cases is *-ke- ‘be a certain number of’.

sëh niwáhsöda:ge:h ‘three nights’  (*niwahsötake:h)
Cf. deknih: dewáhsöda:ge:h ‘two nights’
sëh nigá:wisda:ge:h ‘three dollars, cups’  (*nikahwíhstake:h)
Cf. deknih: degyá:wisda:ge:h ‘two dollars, cups’
sëh niyósáé’dage:h ‘three (kinds of) beans, three-bean soup’  (*niyosahe’take:h)
Cf. deknih: deyosáé’dage:h ‘two beans’

48
With verbs expressing the kind or manner of something, the partitive can be translated 'how', 'in what way'.

- niójhsa: ‘how it begins’ (*ntyohsaw’)
- niwáda’hö:n ‘how it’s attached’ (*niwata’höt)
- niyogwenyö:h ‘how it’s possible’ (*niyokwenyö:h)
- niyóhdëjö:h ‘how it’s going’ (*niyothëtyö:h)
- niyáwësdáhgö:h ‘how it has happened’ (*niyawëstahköh)

It is required by the verb root *-õ’të- ‘be a certain kind, a certain way’.

- nigaënó’dë:h ‘the kind of song it is’ (*nikarëno’të:h)
- nigagéo’dë:h ‘the kind of story it is’ (*nikakaro’të:h)
- nìgwe’dó’dë:h ‘the kind of person he is’ (*nihökwe’tö’të:h)
- nigë dó’dë:h ‘the kind of tree it is’ (*nikaröto’të:h)

The verb root *-yer- ‘do’ also requires the partitive prefix.

- nìgye:ha ‘I do it’ (*nikyerha’)
- nìoye:ëh ‘he has done it’ (*nihoyerëh)

### 4.6.2. Forms of the partitive prefix.

Reconstructed forms of the partitive prefix, including its combinations with the three modal prefixes and with other prepronominial prefixes, are shown in Tables 4.1 and 4.2.

When there is no modal prefix, the partitive form is *ni-; see numerous examples above. With the future prefix, the partitive *n precedes it in the combination *në-:

- nëya:wëh ‘what will happen’ (*nëyawëh)
- nëhsajé:a’t ‘how you will use it’ (*nëhsatyera’t)
- nëyó’hasdëh ‘how strong it will become’ (*nëyo’hastëh)

With the hypothetical prefix *aa-, the partitive *n precedes it in the combination *nëa

- na:yawëh or nö:yawëh ‘how it might happen’ (*naayawëh)
- na:ya’gë’ or nö:ya’gë’ ‘what she might say’ (*naayakë’)
- ná:wa’dáia’t or nö:wö’dáia’t ‘it might warm it’ (*naawa’tariha’t)

This combination takes the form *nae- before an inclusive or second person pronominal prefix, with the exception of a second person singular agent.

- ná:ésni ‘what you (du) might say’ (*naesen’)
- ná:éswaye: ‘you (pl) might do it’ (*naeswayer’)

The partitive *n combines with the factual prefix *wa- in the form *na’- (> nö’-).
This combination takes the form *ne- before an inclusive or second person pronominal prefix, with the exception of a second person singular agent.

nesni’ ‘what you (du) said’ (*nesni’)

nedwa:ye’ ‘we (in.pl) did it’ (*netwayer’)

4.7. The coincident prefix

4.7.1. Uses of the coincident prefix. When it is used alone (in the absence of another prepronominal prefix), the coincident expresses temporal subordination (‘when’), usually with reference to a generic state or event.

\[\text{tšigōgwē’dase:} \quad \text{‘when I was a young man’} \quad (*\text{tshikōkwe’tase:}')\]
\[\text{tšiwegasha:a’s} \quad \text{‘when I remember it’} \quad (*\text{tshiwakashara’s})\]
\[\text{tšigáita:nye:h} \quad \text{‘when I was playing’} \quad (*\text{tshikatkahnye:h})\]

The coincident combines with the duplicative prefix in the combination *tsha’te- to express ‘the same’.

\[\text{tsa’dewa’} \quad \text{‘it’s the same size’} \quad (*\text{tsha’tewa’})\]
\[\text{tsa’déyo’dē:h} \quad \text{‘it’s the same kind, a tie score’} \quad (*\text{tsha’teyo’tē:h})\]
\[\text{Tsa’degēyōyes} \quad \text{‘skies of the same length’} \quad (*\text{tsha’tekarōhyes})\]

(a chief’s title)

The coincident and factual prefixes combine with the verb root *-t- ‘stand’ as another way of expressing sameness or similarity.

\[\text{ts’a’ga:t} \quad \text{‘it’s the same, similar’} \quad (*\text{tsha’kat})\]
\[\text{ts’a’gaivat} \quad \text{‘it’s the same story’} \quad (*\text{tsha’karihwat})\]

4.7.2. Forms of the coincident prefix. Reconstructed forms of the coincident prefix, including its combinations with the three modal prefixes and with other prepronominal prefixes, are shown in Tables 4.1 and 4.2.

When there is no modal prefix, the coincident form is *tshi-; see examples above.

With the future prefix, the coincident *tsh precedes it in the combination *tshē-. 

\[\text{tsëwö:da:k} \quad \text{‘when it will be contained in it’} \quad (*\text{tshëwatak})\]
\[\text{tsēgējōjë:sek} \quad \text{‘when I will be present’} \quad (*\text{tshēgēhōye’sek})\]

With the hypothetical prefix, the coincident *tsh precedes it in the forms *tshaa- and *tshae-.

\[\text{tsha:gi} \quad \text{‘when I might see it’} \quad (*\text{tshaaki})\]
\[\text{tshaéswe} \quad \text{‘when you (pl) might see it’} \quad (*\text{tshaeswē})\]

With the factual prefix, the coincident *tsh precedes it in the forms *tsha’- and *tshe-.

\[\text{tsha’gāhsawē} \quad \text{‘when I began’} \quad (*\text{tsha’kahsawē})\]
tshaënödi:yo’ ‘when they fought’ (*tsha’hënatriyo’)
tsheswadi:yo’ ‘when you (pl) fought’ (*tceswatriyo’)

There is a frequently heard variant form of the sequence tsha in which the initial t is lacking: sha’gåhsawë’ ‘when I began’ etc.

4.8. The contrastive prefix

4.8.1. Uses of the contrastive prefix. This prefix indicates that a state or event is different, unusual, abnormal, unexpected, or extreme.

tiga:de’ ‘it’s different’ (*thikate’)
tiyógwe’da:de’ ‘a different person’ (*thiyökwe’tate’)
tiyódö’öh ‘it has become unusual’ (*thiyota’öh)
tiyo:ëh ‘he’s doing it in an unusual way’ (*thihoyere’h)
tiyóhjön ‘it’s very frightening’ (*thiyohtröht)

4.8.2. Forms of the contrastive prefix. Reconstructed forms of the contrastive prefix, including its combinations with the three modal prefixes and with other prepronominal prefixes, are shown in Tables 4.1 and 4.2.

When there is no modal prefix, the contrastive form is *thi-; see examples above.

With the future prefix, the contrastive *th precedes it in the combination *thë-. 

tegüjë’s:è:k ‘I will be continue to be present’ (*thékëhötye’sèk)
të:nòdöhöhdë:di’ ‘their lives are just beginning’ (*thëhënatönhahahtëti’)

With the hypothetical prefix, the contrastive *th precedes it in the forms *thaa- (> ta:) and *thae- (> tae-). 

tayawëh ‘it won’t happen again’ (*thaayawëh)
taetwayeh ‘we can’t do it’ (*thaetwayerh)

With the factual prefix, the contrastive *th precedes it in the forms *tha’- (> ta’-) and *the- (> te-).

ta’eyø:nö’ ‘she just did a little here and there’ (*tha’yeyerahnö’)
tedwáiOse: ‘we finish it’ (*thetwarihohse:’)

The following example was observed in a context where it was preceded by another contrastive word, in which the contrastive prefix was attached to the particle sgë:nö’ ‘well-being, health’.

tisgë:nö’ tedwáiOse:’ ‘it is very well that we finish it’

4.9. The negative prefix

4.9.1. Uses of the negative prefix. As the name implies, the negative prefix expresses a judgment that an event or state does not coincide with reality. In the following examples with the habitual and stative aspects this prefix takes the form *te’- (> de’-).
de’gyë:twas ‘I don’t plant’ (*te’kyëthwahs)
de’ёнё’e’s ‘she doesn’t like it’ (*te’yenöhw’e’s)
de’wi:yо:h ‘it’s not good’ (*te’wiyo:h)
de’we:so’ ‘not much’ (*te’we:so’)

Seneca has extended the use of the negative prefix to certain morphological environments where it does not occur in the other Northern Iroquoian languages. For example, in those other languages a word containing this prefix is regularly preceded by a particle meaning ‘no’: Mohawk and Oneida yah, Onondaga hiya, and Cayuga thé’. Seneca speakers may also use the word hë’ëh ‘no’ in a similar way, sometimes with another particle separating hë’ëh from the negated word containing de’-

hë’ëh de’ónökdо:t ‘there isn’t time’
hë’ëh нàх de’dzо’dë:h ‘it isn’t like that anymore’

Often in Seneca, however, the negated verb occurs without the preceding hë’ëh, as in the following examples and many more.

de’sgya:гë’s ‘I don’t go out anymore’
de’we:so’ de’gyë:twas ‘I don’t plant very much’

The second of these examples contains a double negation, with the first word a negation of the particle we:so’ ‘a lot’.

Lounsbury (1953: 47) stated that in Oneida the negative prefix may occur either alone or in combination with the repetitive or cisolocative prepronominal prefixes, but that in other environments negation is signaled by the contrastive prefix. In Seneca, however, the negative prefix may also occur with the duplicative and translocative prepronominal prefixes, as well as with the factual and hypothetical modal prefixes. It does not occur, however, with the partitive, coincident, contrastive, or future prefixes.

4.9.1.1. The negative prefix with a particle. It is not unusual for the negative prefix to be attached to a particle as well as to a verb.

de’sö:ga’ ‘no one’ Cf. sö:ga’ ‘somebody’
de’we:so’ ‘not much’ Cf. we:so’ ‘a lot’
de’wë:dоh ‘never’ Cf. wë:dоh ‘when’
de’to:hah ‘not even close’ Cf. to:hah ‘near, nearly’
de’онëhjhо ‘not long ago’ Cf. онëhjhо ‘long ago’
de’nìs ‘not you’ Cf. nìs ‘you’
de’dо:gës ‘not true’ Cf. до:gës ‘true’
de’we:ëh ‘not far’ Cf. we:ëh ‘far’

4.9.1.2. The negative prefix with a noun. In rare cases the negative prefix is attached to a noun.

de’gагә: ‘not a story, a fact’ Cf. гагә:a ‘story’
de’ганö’dза ‘not a pot’ Cf. ганö’dза ‘pot’
de’swáiwa ‘not your (pl) fault’ Cf. óiwa ‘cause’

52
4.9.2. Forms of the negative prefix. Reconstructed forms of the negative prefix, including its combination with other prepronominial prefixes and with the factual and hypothetical modal prefixes, are shown in Tables 4.1 and 4.2.

When there is no modal prefix, the negative form is *te'- (> de'-); see examples above. In casual speech negative *te'- harmonizes to *ta'- when followed by the vowel a.

With the repetitive prefix *s-, the negative precedes it in the combination *te's- (> de's-).

\begin{align*}
de'sgya:ge's & \quad \text{‘I don’t go out anymore’} \quad (*te’skyake’s) \\
de'dzo’dé:he & \quad \text{‘it isn’t like that anymore’} \quad (*te’syo’té:he)
\end{align*}

With the cislocative prefix *t-, the negative precedes it in the combination *te’t- (> de’t-).

\begin{align*}
de’té’jö' & \quad \text{‘he isn’t living there’} \quad (*te’thé’tro’)
\text{de’jö’s} & \quad \text{‘she isn’t coming’} \quad (*te’tyé’s)
\end{align*}

With the duplicative prefix *te-, the negative precedes it in the combination *ta’te- (> da’de-).

\begin{align*}
da’dégaye:i' & \quad \text{‘it isn’t enough’} \quad (*ta’tekayeri’)
\text{da’déyoha:teh} & \quad \text{‘it doesn’t give light’} \quad (*ta’teyorhatheh)
\end{align*}

With the translocative prefix *he-, the negative overlaps it in the form *the’- (> te’-).

\begin{align*}
te’ós’ahdöh & \quad \text{‘it isn’t used up’} \quad (*the’yos’ahtöh)
\text{te’ga:go:n} & \quad \text{‘it’s not forever’} \quad (*the’kakö)
\end{align*}

4.9.3. Future and past negations. Future and past negations are expressed with unique morphological constructions. Future negation is expressed with the contrastive prefix followed by the hypothetical modal prefix and the imperative suffix at the end of the word (14.4).

\begin{align*}
tá:ke:geh & \quad \text{‘I won’t see her’} \quad (*thaakhekëh) \\
\text{Cf. ké:ge}’ & \quad \text{‘I will see her’}
\text{tö:sayeyöh} & \quad \text{‘she won’t get back’} \quad (*thöösayeyöh) \\
\text{Cf. édze:yö’} & \quad \text{‘she’ll get back’}
\end{align*}

Past negation is expressed by combining the negative prefix *te'- with a stative aspect form of the verb in which, however, the final vowel is lengthened and followed by a glottal stop.

\begin{align*}
de’ke:ge’ & \quad \text{‘I didn’t see her’} \quad (*te’khekë:’) \\
\text{Cf. ke:ge:} & \quad \text{‘I’ve seen her’}
\text{dó:da’ö’} & \quad \text{‘he didn’t go to sleep’} \quad (*te’hota’ö:) \\
\text{Cf. hodá’öh} & \quad \text{‘he’s asleep’}
\text{de’ö’së’ö’} & \quad \text{‘it didn’t fall’} \quad (*te’yo’së’ö:) \\
\text{Cf. o’së’öh} & \quad \text{‘it has fallen’}
\end{align*}
When the negative prefix is combined with the factual prefix, the verb does not signal past tense but rather a negated generic event or state. In the following examples the negative precedes the factual prefix a or e in the forms *te’a- (> da’a- with vowel harmony) or *te’e- (> de’e-).

**da’ágatgë:ni’** ‘I don’t compete’ (*te’akatkëni’)
**da’awagásh:’t** ‘I don’t remember’ (*te’awakashara’t)
**da’awagegayëh** ‘I don’t consent’ (*te’awakekayëh)
**de’éswashà:å’t** ‘you (pl) don’t remember’ (*te’eswashara’t)

The negative prefix precedes the hypothetical prefix aa or ae in the forms *te’aa- (> de’a:- or da’a:-) and *te’ae- (> de’ae-).

**da’a:ge:go’** ‘I couldn’t accept it’ (*te’aakeko’)
**de’aeswa:go’** ‘you (pl) couldn’t accept it’ (*te’aeswako’)
**da’a:gagwe:ni’** ‘it wouldn’t be possible’ (*te’aakakweni’)
**da’a:gesnye’t** ‘I couldn’t talk’ (*te’aakesnye’t)

Mithun (1995a) discussed competing forces that may have led to the special constraints and forms associated with the negative prefix in the various Northern Iroquoian languages.
5. VERB MORPHOLOGY PART 3: EXPANDED VERB BASES

5.1. Introduction

The verb root, as shown in Figures 3.1 and 4.1, may be expanded in one or more of the various ways that are sketched in Figure 5.1. The term base will be used for any or all of these expansions. A base may begin with a middle voice prefix (5.2) or a reflexive prefix (5.3), the verb root may be preceded by an incorporated noun root (5.4), and the root may be followed by one or more of a set of derivational suffixes (5.5).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>middle voice or reflexive prefix</th>
<th>incorporated noun root</th>
<th>verb root</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>derivational suffix</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>causative-instrumental</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inchoative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>benefactive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>distributive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ambulative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>andative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>directional</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>eventuative</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>reversive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>circumstantial</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 5.1. Expansions of the verb base

5.2. The middle voice prefix

When the middle voice (Lounsbury’s semireflexive) prefix is present, it is the first element in the verb base. Its forms vary considerably.

5.2.1. Functions of the middle voice prefix. Typically the agent of an event that is marked with the middle voice prefix is not only the initiator of the event but is also affected by it in some way. For example, the agent may act on something that belongs to him or her.

wá:tgösgáhadë’ ‘he turned his face upward’ (*wa’hatkōhskarhatë’)
hodíhgwa:ōh ‘he has put his hat on’ (*hotirhikwarahröh)

The middle voice prefix may change a base from transitive to intransitive.

o’twado:wē’ ‘it split’ (*wa’twatowë’)  
Cf. dewago:wē’ ‘I’ve split it’ (*tewakowē’)  
wa:ajē:’ ‘he sat down’ (*wa’hatyē’)  
Cf. wa:ayē:’ ‘he set it down’ (*wa’hayē’)

Or it may change a base from active to passive.
Sometimes a base with the middle voice prefix means the reverse of what it means without it.

\[\text{o’gáde’ho:we:k} \quad \text{‘I got covered’} \quad (*wa’kate’horek)\]

\[\text{Cf. wa’êho:we:k} \quad \text{‘she covered it’} \quad (*wa’ye’horek)\]

\[\text{o’wa:ja’k} \quad \text{‘it was broken off’} \quad (*wa’watya’k)\]

\[\text{Cf. o’kya’k} \quad \text{‘I broke it’} \quad (*wa’kya’k)\]

In other cases the resulting meaning is less predictable.

\[\text{é:yatšo:wi’} \quad \text{‘I’ll tell about him’} \quad (*éheya’throri’)\]

\[\text{Cf. é:owi’} \quad \text{‘I’ll tell him’} \quad (*éhehrori’)\]

\[\text{odö:ni:h} \quad \text{‘it’s growing’} \quad (*otöni:h)\]

\[\text{Cf. éyagö:ni’} \quad \text{‘she’ll make it’} \quad (*éyaköni’)\]

\[\text{wa’ôdekö:ni’} \quad \text{‘she ate’} \quad (*wa’yötekhöni’)\]

\[\text{Cf. wa’ékö:ni’} \quad \text{‘she cooked’} \quad (*wa’yekhöni’)\]

5.2.2. Forms of the middle voice prefix. The forms of this prefix are varied, and not always phonologically predictable. The most common form is *-at-, followed in roughly descending order of occurrence by *-ate-, *-ë-, *-âtë-, *-ën-, *-ër-, *-a-, *-ëni-, and *-an-. Lounsbury (1947) pointed to intriguing resemblances between the forms of Iroquoian middle voice prefixes and similar elements in Cariban languages.

*-at- (often > -ad-) occurs regularly before a base beginning with a vowel or a resonant followed by a vowel, sometimes with an intervening h. It is found occasionally in irregular examples. To repeat examples above:

\[\text{o’twado:wë’} \quad \text{‘it split’} \quad (*wa’twatowë:)\]

\[\text{wa:a jë’} \quad \text{‘he sat down’} \quad (*wa’hatyë:)\]

\[\text{wà:tšo:wi’} \quad \text{‘he told about it’} \quad (*wa’hathrori’)\]

\[\text{wà:tgösgáhadë’} \quad \text{‘he turned his face upward’} \quad (*wa’hatköhskarhatë’)\]

*-ate- (> -adë-) occurs before a base beginning with two obstruents, two resonants, sometimes before a resonant and an obstruent (in either order), and rarely before s, t, or r.

\[\text{odésgayö:ni:h} \quad \text{‘growing bushes’} \quad (*oteskawöni:h)\]

\[\text{yödëyësta’} \quad \text{‘she’s learning’} \quad (*yötewyëstha’)\]

\[\text{éhsádeha’t} \quad \text{‘you will dry it’} \quad (*éhsaterha’t)\]

\[\text{wadésáé’dö:n} \quad \text{‘baked beans’} \quad (*watesahe’töt)\]

\[\text{o’wadá:hgwiri:në’t} \quad \text{‘the moon went in’} \quad (*wa’waterahkwinë’t)\]
*-ë- occurs before a base beginning with *n, or with *n preceded or followed by a laryngeal obstruent.

**o’tënö’sgwak** ‘he jumped up’  (*wa’thëna’skwahkw*)
**wáënë’nyada:t** ‘they reached out their hands’  (*wa’hënë’nyatat*)
**o’gé:nëhsawëhta:t** ‘I put my shoulder next to it’  (*wa’këhnëhsawëhta:t*)

*-atë- (>-adë-) occurs in the same phonological environments as -ë-, but with other bases.

**hadë:hö’**s ‘he hires, employer’  (*hatënha’s*)
**waënödë’ne:a’** ‘they won’  (*wa’hënatë’neha:’*)
**agádë:nì:nö’** ‘I’ve sold it’  (*wakatëhninö’*)

Some bases with -*atë- have alternate forms with -*ate- (>-ade-).

**ëhsádë’nìkò:’** or **ëhsáde’nìkò:’** ‘you will sew’  (*ëhsatë/ate’nìkhö:’*)

The following appears to show vowel harmony with the *ë* of the root.

**o’gadë:gë’** ‘I saw it for myself’  (*wa’katëkë’*)

*-ën- occurs before some bases beginning with i.

**hëni’dota’** ‘he’s defecating’  (*hëni’totha’*)
**hëniśgöje’s** ‘he’s spitting’  (*hëniskrötye’s*)

*-ër- occurs before *-ahs- and *-ahsi’- ‘foot’ and *-ahtahkw- ‘shoe’. The resulting sequence *ëra* was replaced by *ëä* and finally ë.

**o’tgë:hso:we:k** ‘I put my shoes on’  (*wa’tkërahsorek*)

*literally* ‘I covered my feet’
**agë:hsë’ja’göh** ‘my foot has been cut off’  (*wakërahsë’tya’köh*)
**desë:hdáhgwane:dëh** ‘put on your overshoes’  (*tesërahtahkwetëh*)

*-a- occurs before the noun root *-tsëh- ‘fire’.

**honôtsë:öni:h** ‘they have made themselves a fire’  (*honatshëhöni:h*)

*-ëni- occurs before the noun root *-s’oht- ‘hand’.

**agënis’ôhda:e’** ‘I’ve put my hand on it’  (*wakënis’ohtaher*)

*-an- occurs more rarely before bases beginning with *i.*
5.3. The reflexive prefix

Like the middle voice prefix, the reflexive is the first element in the verb base.

5.3.1. Functions of the reflexive prefix. The reflexive prefix differs semantically from the middle voice prefix by separating more clearly the two roles of the participant, who is simultaneously both agent and patient.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{o’gádate:} ‘I cut myself’ (*wa’katathren’)
  \item \textit{o’gadade:gë’} ‘I saw myself’ (in a mirror) (*wa’katatekë’)
  \item \textit{sadája’dágehah} ‘help yourself’ (*satatyaa’takenhah)
\end{itemize}

5.3.2. Forms of the reflexive prefix. The reflexive prefix is formed by reduplication of the middle marker, and specifically by prefixing *-at- (> -ad-) to one of the middle voice prefix forms, yielding *-atat-, *-atate-, *-atë-, *-atatë-, *-atëni-, *-atatëni-, or *-atan-. As with the middle voice prefix, these forms are only partially predictable on a phonological basis.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{o’tën dade:gë’} ‘they saw each other’ (*wa’thënatatekë’)
  \item \textit{deyadajenö:s ‘they (dual) wrestle’} (*tehyatatyenas)
  \item \textit{dë:nödajenö:s ‘they (plural) wrestle’} (*tehënatatyenas)
  \item \textit{do:nödagenöwö:se:h ‘they’re helping each other’} (*tehonatatyenawa’se:h)
\end{itemize}

5.3.3. The reciprocal construction. When the reflexive prefix is combined with the duplicative prepronominal prefix (4.4.1.3), the result is a reciprocal meaning in which several agents act on one another.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{wá:ho:dö:’} ‘he closed the door’ (*wa’hanhotö:’)
  \item \textit{wahgwa:se:’} ‘new suit’ (*wahkwase:’)
\end{itemize}

Occasionally the incorporated noun plays the role of an instrument rather than a patient.

\begin{itemize}
  \item \textit{wá:ge’nhya:yën ‘he hit me with a club’} (*wa’hake’nhyayëht)
\end{itemize}
Not all verb roots allow incorporation, as is true, for example, of *-hrori- ‘tell someone something’. Conversely there are other verb roots that require it. With the latter, if no other noun root is present an empty noun root is inserted. One verb root of this type is *-ot- ‘stand (something) upright’, which occurs with the empty noun root *-hny- if there is no other noun root.

\[ \text{o'gé:nyo:dë'} \quad \text{‘I stood it upright’} \quad (*\text{wa’kehnyotë'}) \]

Cf. (with an explicit noun root):

\[ \text{o'gá’ëno:dë'} \quad \text{‘I stood the post upright’} \quad (*\text{wa’ka’ënotë'}) \]

5.4.2. The ‘stem-joiner’ vowel. If the noun root ends with a consonant and the following verb root begins with a consonant, the two consonants are usually separated by an epenthetic *-a-, traditionally called the ‘stem joiner’, called the ‘linking vowel’ in the texts below.

\[ \text{ë:oji:ya:k} \quad \text{‘he will eat fruit’} \quad (*\text{ếhatsih-y-a-k}) \]
\[ \text{(-tsih- ‘fruit’, -k- ‘eat’}) \]

The verb root *-ya’k- ‘cut, break’ occurs without this stem joiner.

\[ \text{ha’háhja’s} \quad \text{‘he cuts logs’} \quad (*\text{ha’hahtya’ks}) \]
\[ \text{(-’haht- ‘log’, -ya’k- ‘cut’}) \]

In the following combination the stem-joiner vowel is *-i- rather than *-a-.

\[ \text{hagé’i:ya’s} \quad \text{‘barber’, literally ‘he cuts hair’} \quad (*\text{hake’riya’ks}) \]
\[ \text{(-ke’r- ‘hair’, -ya’k- ‘cut’}) \]

5.4.3. Noun roots of manner. There are at least two cases in which a noun root that expresses the manner of some event is incorporated with a verb root that specifies the nature of the event itself.

5.4.3.1. The manner noun root *-na’skw- ‘jump’. For example:

With the duplicative prefix and the verb root *-es- ‘be long, tall’: ‘jump far or high’

\[ \text{dá:nö’sgwe:s} \quad \text{‘he jumps far or high, high jumper’} \quad (*\text{tehana’skwes}) \]

With the duplicative prefix, the middle voice prefix, and the verb root *-hkw- ‘lift’: ‘jump up’, literally ‘lift oneself by jumping’

\[ \text{o’ténö’skwak} \quad \text{‘he jumped up’} \quad (*\text{wa’tëna’skwahk}) \]

With the duplicative prefix, the middle voice prefix, and the verb root *-r- ‘be in’: ‘jump competitively’
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

dë:nëñó’skwaha’ ‘they jump, jumping contest’

(*dehëñëna’skwarha’)

With the translocative and duplicative prefixes, the middle voice prefix, and the verb root *
-o’yak- ‘throw’: ‘jump somewhere’

ha’déonó’sgo’ya:göh ‘he has jumped over there’

(*ha’tehona’sko’yaköh)

With the duplicative prefix, the middle voice prefix, and the verb root *(i)ya’k- ‘cross’: ‘jump across’

o’téñó’sgwí:ya’k ‘he jumped across’

(*wa’thëna’skwíya’k)

With the duplicative prefix, the cislocative prefix, the verb root *(i)ya’k- ‘cross’ and the causative suffix *(i)ht- ‘jump back down’:

dödà:nô’sgø:dat ‘he jumped back down there’

(*tótaha’skotaht)

5.4.3.2. The manner noun root *
-karh- ‘turn’. The resultant combinations have been lexicalized and may accept a second incorporated noun base. For example:

With the verb root *-t- ‘be standing’ and the causative suffix *(i)ho- ‘turn (transitive)’

o’gégha:to’ ‘I turned it’

(*wa’gekarhatho’)

Plus the incorporated noun base *(i)ho’kwa’shr- ‘key’, literally ‘what opens the door’

o’géhôdögwá’shágaha:to’ ‘I turned the key’

(*wa’kenhotök’wa’shrakarhatho’)

With the verb root *(i)teni- ‘change’ and the causative suffix *(i)t- ‘roll’

wá:ghahéndya’t ‘he rolled it’

(*wa’hakarhatenya’t)

With the middle voice prefix, the incorporated noun root *(i)rihw- ‘speech’, and the verb root *(i)eta- ‘come to the end’: ‘for a speech to end in a turning manner’, i.e. ‘turn over the floor’.

o’dwádì:wágahë:da’t ‘the speech ends, the floor is turned over’

(*wa’twarihwakarhëta’t)

5.5. Derivational suffixes

5.5.1. Introduction. A verb root may be followed by one or more suffixes to create a derived base whose meaning or function differs in some way from the meaning or function of the verb root alone. Seneca has thirteen of these derivational suffixes. None of them occurs with all verb roots and some occur with very few. Often the derived meaning is unpredictable. Several of these suffixes in sequence can form successive layers of derivation. The order of their introduction here reflects increasing distance from the root when more than one is present. With a few exceptions, if the preceding root ends with a consonant and the derivational suffix begins with a consonant, the stem-joiner vowel *(i)a
separates the two consonants (see 5.4.2). Derivational suffixes include the following, described in the sections indicated.

Inchoative (5.5.2)
Archaic causative (5.5.3)
New causative (5.5.4)
Instrumental (5.5.5)
Distributive (5.5.6)
Double distributive (5.5.7)
Benefactive (5.5.8)
Andative (5.5.9)
Andative plus purposive (5.5.10)
Archaic reversive (5.5.11)
New reversive (5.5.12)
Directive (5.5.13)
Facilitative (5.5.14)
Eventuative (5.5.15)
Ambulative (5.5.16)
Combinations of derivational suffixes (5.5.17)

5.5.2. The inchoative suffix. The inchoative suffix creates a derived base that indicates entry into the state expressed by the underived root or base. It can usually be translated ‘become’, ‘get’, or ‘come to be’. The term inchoative is a misnomer since the meaning is not one of beginning, but it has nevertheless become the traditional term in Iroquoian studies. Inchoative forms, usually conditioned unpredictably by the preceding verb root or base, include *-sko-, *-he-, *-h/-eh. The *-h and *-ëh alternatives in this list are the forms that occur with the punctual aspect. The aspect suffixes that follow the inchoative are habitual *-s, stative *-öh, and punctual *-t, except that after inchoative *-h and *-ëh there is no overt punctual ending.

Examples of inchoative *-sko-:

*sko- ‘be in water’ occurs with inchoative *-he- in *sko- ‘fall in water’:
   habitual ha’sgo’s ‘he falls in the water’
   stative ho’sgòöh ‘he has fallen in the water’
   punctual wà:sgò’t ‘he fell in the water’

*ahtö- ‘lose’ occurs with inchoative *-he- in *ahtö- ‘get lost, disappear’:
   habitual waht’s ‘it gets lost’
   stative ohdòöh ‘it’s gotten lost’
   punctual o’wähddö’t ‘it got lost’.

*yë(t)- ‘be in place’ occurs with inchoative *-he- in *yëta- ‘land, come down’:
   habitual *gayë:da’s ‘it lands’
   stative oyëda’öh ‘it has landed’
   punctual o’gayë:da’t ‘it landed’.

Examples of inchoative *-he-:

*iyo- ‘be good’ occurs with inchoative *-he- in *iyo’he- ‘become good’:
   habitual wiyo’he’s ‘it becomes good’
   stative awiyo’he’ëh ‘it has become good’
   punctual o’wiyo’he’t ‘it became good’.
*-wyë- ‘know’ occurs with inchoative *-’he’- in *-wyë’he’- ‘learn’:  habitual
geyë’he’s ‘I learn’
    stative agëyë’he’ôh ‘I’ve learned’
punctual o’gëyë’he’t ‘I learned’.
*-atsi- ‘be dark’ occurs with inchoative *-’he’- in *-atsi’he’- ‘get dark’:  habitual
wajî’he’s ‘it gets dark’
    stative ojî’he’ôh ‘it’s gotten dark’
punctual o’wajî’he’t ‘it got dark’.

Examples of inchoative *-’-h (*-’- occurs with the habitual and stative aspects and *-h with the punctual, which has no overt form; see 3.3.3.):

*-ri- ‘be done, cooked, ripe’ occurs with inchoative *-’-h in *-ri’/-rih ‘get done’:
    habitual ga:is ‘it gets done’
    stative ôôh ‘it has gotten done’
punctual o’ga:ih ‘it got done’
*-atkrë- ‘be putrid, rancid, spoiled, rotten’ (*-krë- ‘stink’ preceded by middle voice prefix *-at-) occurs with inchoative *-’-h in *-atkrë’/-atkrëh ‘putrify’:
    habitual otgë’s ‘it putrifies’
    stative otgë’ôh ‘it has putrified’
punctual wa’o:tgëh ‘it putrified’
*-yeri- ‘be right, true, proper’ occurs with inchoative *-’-h in *-yeri’/-yerih with the meaning ‘assemble, gather’:
    habitual hodiyëis ‘they assemble’
    stative hodiyëôh ‘they have assembled’
punctual waodiyëih ‘they assembled’.

Inchoative *-’ô/-ôh occurs with roots whose stative ending is *-ô’. (*-ô’- occurs with the habitual and stative aspects and *-ôh with the punctual, which has no overt form.)

*-st- ‘be heavy’ occurs with inchoative *-’ô/-ôh in *-stô’/-stôh ‘become heavy’:
    habitual osdô’s ‘it becomes heavy’
    stative osdô’ôh ‘it has become heavy’
punctual wa’osdôh ‘it became heavy’
*-asnor- ‘be fast’ occurs with inchoative *-’ô/-ôh in *-asnorô’/-asnorôh ‘speed up’:
    habitual osnô:wô’s ‘it speeds up’
    stative osnôwô’ôh ‘it has sped up’
punctual wa’osnô:wôh ‘it sped up’
*-nakr- ‘be plentiful’ occurs with inchoative *-’ô/-ôh in *-nakrô’/-*nakrôh become plentiful’:
    habitual ganô:ôô’s ‘it becomes plentiful’
    stative onôgô’ôh ‘it has become plentiful’
punctual o’ganôgôh ‘it became plentiful’

** 5.5.3. The archaic causative suffix. Of very limited distribution is a causative suffix with the shape *-hw-. It combines with aspect suffixes as follows: habitual *-hwahs, stative *-hwôh or sometimes *-hôh, punctual *-ho-. The resulting meaning is often unpredictable. Examples:

*-karhat- ‘turn’ (intransitive) occurs with the archaic causative *-hw- in *-karhatw-
    ‘turn’ (transitive):
habitual gegáhatwas ‘I turn it’
stative agégaha:twëh ‘I’ve turned it’
punctual o’gégahato ‘I turned it’
*-yë(t)- ‘be lying’ occurs with the archaic causative *-hw- in *-yëthw- ‘plant’:
habitual gyëtwas ‘I plant’
stative agyë:töh ‘I have planted’
punctual o’gyë:to ‘I planted’
*-atkaht- ‘face, confront’ loses its internal h with the archaic causative *-hw- in *-atkathw- ‘look at’:
habitual gatga:twas ‘I’m looking at it’
stative agátgatwëh ‘I’ve looked at it’
punctual o’gátgato ‘I looked at it’

5.5.4. The new causative suffix. This suffix creates derived bases that express the idea of an event in which an agent is responsible for causing the event expressed by the underived root or base. It can often be translated ‘cause to’ or ‘make’, but in other cases it leads to specialized meanings. Causative forms, conditioned by the preceding verb root or base, include *-ht-, *-t-, *-hst-, *-st-, and *-t-. The *-hst- variant is evidently cognate with a Tuscarora verb root of the same form meaning ‘use’. It is more common than *-st-, which appears to be a reduced form of it. The aspect suffixes that follow the causative are habitual *-ha’, stative *-öh, and punctual *-0 (no overt ending).

Examples of causative *-ht-:

*-ya’tyenë- ‘fall over’ (of a person) occurs with causative *-ht- in *-ya’tyenëht- ‘make someone fall’:
habitual höwọya’jénëta ‘they make him fall’
stative höwọya’jënëhtöh ‘they have made him fall’
punctual òwọyà’jèn:nèn ‘they will make him fall’.
*-a’së- ‘fall’ occurs with causative *-ht- in *-a’sëht- ‘drop’:
habitual ga’sëta ‘I drop it’
stative agà’sëhdôh ‘I’ve dropped it’
punctual o’gà’sèn ‘I dropped it’
*-nönhe- ‘be full’ occurs with causative *-ht- in *-nönheht- ‘fill’:
habitual knôhëta ‘I fill it’
stative aknôhehdôh ‘I’ve filled it’
punctual o’knôhet ‘I filled it’

Examples of causative *-t-:

*-ahrök- ‘hear’ occurs with causative *-t- in *-ahrôka’t- ‘notify’:
habitual heyáogá’ta ‘I notify him’
stative heyáogá’dôh ‘I’ve notified him’
punctual wàeya:òga’t ‘I notified him’
*-atek- ‘burn’ (intransitive) occurs with causative *-t- in *-ateka’t- ‘make a fire’:
habitual hadéga’ta ‘he makes a fire’
stative hodéga’dôh ‘he’s made a fire’
punctual wa:de:ga’t ‘he made a fire’
*-nyahr- ‘boil’ (intransitive) occurs with causative *-t- in *-nyahra’t- ‘boil’ (transitive):
habitual yenỳà:’ta ‘she boils it’
Examples of causative *-hst-:

* -yërë- ‘be hurt’ occurs with causative *-hst- in *-yërëhst- ‘hurt, injure’:
  habitual hagêśta ‘he hurts me’
  stative hagêśdôh ‘he has hurt me’
  punctual wa:gêśës ‘he hurt me’

* -tokë- ‘be straight’ occurs with causative *-hst- in *-tokëhst- ‘straighten’:
  habitual kdogêstå ‘I straighten it’
  stative akdogêśdôh ‘I’ve straightened it’
  punctual o’kdogës ‘I straightened it’.

* -rhë- ‘be dry’ occurs with causative *-hst- in *-rhëhst- ‘dry’ (transitive): habitual gahêstå ‘drier’, literally ‘it dries’
  stative o’ghësh ‘drought’, literally ‘what’s been dried’
  punctual o’ga:hës ‘it dried it’

Examples of causative *-t-:

* -atëtohek- ‘be packed’ occurs with causative *-t- in *-atëtohekt- ‘pack’:
  habitual hadêdo:ekta ‘he packs it’
  stative hodêdo:ekdôh ‘he has packed it’
  punctual wa:dëdô:ek ‘he packed it’.

* -karit- ‘be on a slant’ occurs with causative *-t- in *-karitât- ‘cause to slant’ or ‘get the best of’:
  habitual hôwâdiga:ta ‘they get the best of them’
  stative hôwâdîgâdöh ‘they’ve gotten the best of them’
  punctual wa hôwâdiga:ta ‘they got the best of them’

* -hnir- ‘be hard, solid’ occurs with causative *-t- in *-hnirât- ‘make solid’:
  habitual ha:n y ta’ ‘cooking utensil, cookhouse’, literally ‘one uses it for cooking’
  stative ho:nîyâdôh ‘he has made it solid’
  punctual wa:nî:yâ:t ‘he made it solid’.

With certain roots or bases any of these causative forms may have an alternative instrumental meaning, with semantic slippage between an agent and an instrument. This construction is often used with the habitual aspect to refer to an object or place that is used for something, as in the last three examples following.

* -yëhw- ‘plant’ (see 5.5.2) occurs with causative *-ht- in *-yëhwâht- ‘use for planting’:
  habitual gyëtwâta ‘I use it for planting’
  stative aghëtwahdôh ‘I’ve used it for planting’
  punctual o’gyëtwat ‘I used it for planting’

* -khôni- ‘cook’ occurs with causative *-t- in *-khônya’t- ‘use for cooking’:
  habitual yekônya’ta ‘cooking utensil, cookhouse’, literally ‘one uses it for cooking’

* -ënôhe- ‘stay overnight’ occurs with causative *-hst- in *-ënôhehst- ‘use for staying overnight’:
  habitual yênôesta ‘bedroom’, literally ‘one uses it for staying overnight’

* -awak- ‘sift’ occurs with causative *-t- in *-awakt- ‘use for sifting’:
habitual yōwō:ktą' 'sieve', literally 'one uses it for sifting'.

The causative forms described above are for the most part mutually exclusive, but occasionally they occur with the same root or base with slightly different meanings. For example, the root *-ahso- 'color or paint' (transitive) occurs without a causative in:

habitual hahsō:s 'he paints, painter'

The causative forms described above are for the most part mutually exclusive, but occasionally they occur with the same root or base with slightly different meanings. For example, the root *-ahso- 'color or paint' (transitive) occurs without a causative in:

habitual hahsō:s 'he paints, painter'
stative agáhsoh 'I’ve painted it'
punctual o'gáhsoh 'I painted it'

and with the following causative forms:

With causative *-ht- in *-ahsoht-:

habitual gahsóta' 'I paint with it'

With causative *-hst- in *-ahsohst-:

habitual yōhsósta' 'paintbrush', literally 'one uses it for painting'

With causative *-t- in yōhsō:ta' 'paintbrush', but also the plant Hierarcium aurantiacum or H. pratense.

Occasionally a causative form has an inchoative meaning:

The stem *-hnyō'oh 'be a white man' occurs with causative *-hst- in *-atehnyō'ohst- 'become like a white man', presumably from 'it makes (someone) like a white man':

habitual hënóde:nyō'osta' 'they become like white men'
punctual waënódë:nyō'ös 'they became like white men'

5.5.5. The instrumental suffix. This suffix, with the form *-hkw-, creates derived bases that refer to something that is used for the purpose of the action expressed by the underived root or base. It takes habitual *-a’, stative *-éh or *-ōh, and punctual *-ō with loss of the final w.

*-ahso- 'color, paint’ occurs with instrumental *-hkw- in *-ahsohkw- ‘use for coloring, painting’:

habitual ohsōhgwa’ 'color, paint, dye’

*-hashet- ‘hold a council’ occurs with instrumental *-hkw- in *-hashetahkw- ‘use for holding a council’:

habitual hadiahsēdahgwa’ ‘council house, courthouse’, literally ‘they use it for holding a council’
punctual wā:diashi:dak ‘they held a council on it’

*-atyera’t- ‘use’ occurs with instrumental *-hkw- in *-atyera’tahkw- ‘make use of’:

habitual hēnōjā’:dahgwa’ ‘they make use of it’
static honōjā’:dahgōh ‘they have made use of it’
punctual ē:nōjā’:dak ‘they will make use of it’

A frequent way of referring to an object that is used for some purpose is to combine this instrumental suffix, the habitual aspect, and the feminine singular agent prefix:

*-atrēnot- ‘sing’ occurs with instrumenal *-hkw- in *-atrēnotahkw- ‘use for singing’:

habitual yōdēnōdāhgwa’ ‘musical instrument’, literally ‘one uses it for singing’.

5.5.6. The distributive suffix. The distributive suffix indicates either that an event or state affects several people or objects or that it is distributed in time or space (Mithun 1999: 88-91). It differs from a plural marker in implying that the several entities are of different types, or are located at different places or at different times. It is found very
often (though certainly not exclusively) in the stative aspect. It may consist of nothing more than the vowel *-ö-, or this vowel may be preceded by one or more consonants in *-hö-, *-hnö-, *-hsö-, *-nyö-, *-shö-, and *-'hö-. It is followed by the aspect markers habitual *-h or *-ha’, stative *-’, and punctual *:-’.

Examples of distributive *-ö- (usually after t or r):

*-niyöt- ‘hang’ has distributive *-niyötö- ‘hang various things’ or ‘hang things in various places’:
  habitual kniyö:döh ‘I hang things’
  stative akniyö:dö’ ‘I’ve hung things’
  punctual o’kniyö:dö? ‘I hung things’
*-tsihrot- ‘plug something up’ has distributive *-tsihrotö- ‘plug things up’:
  habitual gejı:odöh ‘I plug them up’
  stative agé:i:odö ‘I’ve plugged them up’
  punctual o’gejı:odö ‘I plugged them up’.

Examples of distributive *-hö-:

*-yas- ‘be named’ has distributive *-yashö- ‘have names’ or ‘call people’s names’:
  stative hadiyashö ‘they are named’
  punctual wá:yashö ‘he called the names’.
*-hnya’kh- ‘put together’ has distributive *-hnya’khaö- ‘put things together’:
  stative ga:nyá’kaö ‘quilt’, literally ‘things put together’
*-nöhskw- ‘steal’ has distributive *-nöhskwaö- ‘steal things’:
  habitual hanós:gwáöh ‘thief’, literally ‘he steals things’

Examples of distributive *-hnö-:

*-yëht- ‘hit’ has distributive *-yëhtaö- ‘hit repeatedly’:
  habitual hayëhd:nöh ‘he’s hitting it repeatedly’
  stative hoyëhd:nö ‘he has hit it repeatedly’
  punctual wá:yëhd:nö ‘he hit it repeatedly’
*-athrori- ‘tell about’ has distributive *-athroryahnö- ‘tell about things’:
  habitual gat’sonya:nöh ‘I’m telling about things’
  stative agát’sonya:nö ‘I’ve told about things’
  punctual ēgát’sonya:nö ‘I’ll tell about things’.
*-aterha’t- ‘dry something of one’s own’ has distributive *-aterha’tahnö- ‘dry one’s things’:
  habitual yodéha’dá:nöh ‘she dries her things’
  stative godéha’dá:nö ‘she has dried her things’
  punctual wa’ôdeha’dá:nö ‘she dried her things’.

Examples of distributive *-hsö-:

*-ha- ‘take’ has distributive *-hahsö- ‘take things’:
  habitual há:hsöh ‘he takes things’
  stative hoahsö ‘he has taken things’
  punctual wá:ahsö ‘he took things’.
*-yëthw- ‘plant’ has distributive *-yëthwahs- ‘plant things’:
habitual hayëthwahsö ‘he plants things’
stative hoyëthwso ‘he has planted things’
punctual wá:yëthwáhsö ‘he planted things’.

*.-hshe- ‘chase’ has distributive *-.hshehsö- ‘chase things’:
habitual geshéhsö ‘I chase things’
stative agéshehsö ‘I’m chasing things’
punctual o’geshehsö ‘I chased things’.

Examples of distributive *-nyö-:

*.-ktö- ‘check out, investigate’ has distributive *.-ktönyö- ‘feel around among several objects, examine (with transitive prefix)’:
habitual hokdö:nyöh ‘he’s examining him’
stative hokdö:nyöh ‘he has examined him’
punctual wáókdnö:nyö ‘he examined him’.

*.-atorö- ‘mend, patch’ has distributive *.-atorönyö- ‘mend several things’ or ‘patch something in several places’:
habitual yödoönyöh ‘she puts in patches’
stative godo nyö ‘she has put in patches’
punctual wa’odo:önyö: ‘she put in patches’.

*.-hyatö- ‘write’ has distributive *.-hyatönyö- ‘write things’:
habitual ye:ya:döh ‘she writes things’
stative go:ya:dö ‘she’s written things’
punctual wa’eyadö: ‘she wrote things’.

Examples of distributive *-shrö-:

*.-yëntöta- ‘finish a project’ has distributive *.-yënta’shrö- ‘finish several projects’:
habitual agwayëntëda’söh ‘we finish our projects’
stative ògwayëntëda’sö ‘we’ve finished our projects’
punctual wa’agwayëntëdá’sö: ‘we finished our projects’.

*.-snye- ‘speak’ has distributive *.-snye’shrö- ‘speak about various things’:
habitual had snye’shrö ‘they speak about various things’
stative gði snye’sö ‘they’ve spoken about various things’
punctual wa’dísnyë’sö: ‘they spoke about various things’.

Examples of distributive *-’hö-:

*.-ahkwi- ‘clean up’ has distributive *-ahkwi’hö- ‘clean things up’:
habitual ga’hgwí’hö ‘I’m cleaning things up’
stative aga’hgwí’hö ‘I’ve cleaned things up’
punctual o’ga’hgwí’hö: ‘I cleaned things up’.

*.-ksohare- ‘wash a dish’ has distributive *.-ksohare’hö- ‘wash dishes’:
habitual agwáksowáe’hö ‘we’re washing dishes’
stative ògwa’ksowae’hö ‘we’ve washed the dishes’
punctual wa’a’gwaksówae’hö: ‘we washed the dishes’.

*.-néhkwi- ‘haul’ has distributive *.-néhkwi’hö- ‘haul things’:
habitual ha’néhgwi’hö ‘he hauls things’
stative honéhgwi’hö ‘he has hauled things’
punctual wá:néhgwi’hö: ‘he hauled things’.

68
5.5.6.1. The double distributive. Sometimes a distributive suffix is followed by a second distributive suffix, which in such cases always has the form *-nyö-. The following are a few examples:

Double distributive *-önyö-:

*-ahsaw- ‘begin’ has double distributive *-ahsönyö- ‘begin various things’:
  punctual é:nöhsönyöh ‘they will begin various things’

Double distributive *-hönyö-:

*-ne’ak- ‘do something wrong’ has double distributive *-ne’akhönyö- ‘do various wrong things’:
  habitual hané’akö:nyöh ‘he does various wrong things’

Double distributive *-hnönyö-:

*-atö- ‘say’ has double distributive *-atöhnönyö- ‘say various things’:
  habitual ga:dö:nönyöh ‘I say various things’

Double distributive *-shrönyö-:

*-ashara’- ‘remember’ has double distributive *-asharönyö- ‘remember various things’:
  habitual agáshá’önyöh ‘I remember various things’

Double distributive *-hönyö-:

*-itër- ‘show pity’ has double distributive *-itër’hönyö- ‘show pity repeatedly’:
  punctual wa:gide’hönyöh ‘he had pity on me several times’

5.5.7. The benefactive suffix. The benefactive suffix (traditionally called the dative in Iroquoian studies) indicates that an event or state occurs for the benefit or the detriment of someone. It occurs in several different forms, with the habitual and stative forms (before the slash) differing from the punctual forms (following the slash): *-ni-/ë-, *-ni-/hahs, *-hse-/hs, *-se/-s, *-i-. Following the benefactive suffix the habitual aspect suffix is *-h, the stative is *-ñ. The punctual aspect suffix is *- after *ë, but -0 after *s.

Examples of benefactive *-ni-/ë-:

*-ahseht- ‘hide’ has benefactive *-ni/-ë- in *-ahsehtani-/ahsehte- ‘hide something from someone’:
  habitual hagásheda:ni:ñ ‘he hides it from me’
  stative hagásheda:ni:h ‘he has hidden it from me’
  punctual wá:ghaséhde ‘he hid it from me’.

*-hrsöni- ‘make’ has benefactive *-ni/-ë- in *-hrsönyani-/hrsönye- ‘make something for somebody’:
  habitual hówóhrsönya:ni:ñ ‘they make it for him’
  stative hówóhrsönya:ni:h ‘they’ve made it for him’
  punctual waôwóhrsönye ‘they made it for him’.

69
Examples of benefactive *-ni/-hahs:

*-hthar- ‘talk’ has benefactive *-ni/-hahs in *-tharani/-tharahs ‘talk to somebody’:
habitual hōwōditā:nih ‘they talk to them’
static hōwōditā:ni:h ‘they’re talking to them’
punctual waōwōditahas ‘they talked to them’.

*-ōhwat- ‘point out’ has benefactive *-ni/-hahs in *-ōhwatani/-ōhwathahs ‘point out to somebody’:
habitual hagō:wōda:nih ‘he points it out to me’
static hagō:wōda:nih ‘he has pointed it out to me’
punctual và:gō:wōtās ‘he pointed it out to me’.

*-atwënōt- ‘wish for the best’ has benefactive *-ni/-hahs in *-atwënōtani/-atwënōthahs ‘wish someone well’:
habitual heyadwēnōdanih ‘I wish him well’
static heyadwēnōdanih ‘I wish him well’
punctual waeyadwēnōtās ‘I wished him well’.

Examples of benefactive *-hse/-hs:

*-sthw- ‘be a small amount’ has benefactive *-hse/-hs in *-sthawahse/-sthawahs ‘be small for someone’:
habitual agēstawahseh ‘it gets small for me’ (as clothes)
static agēstawahseh ‘it’s gotten small for me’
punctual ēgesthwas ‘it got small for me’.

*-tokē- ‘be straight’ has benefactive *-hse/-hs in *-tokēhse/-tokēhs ‘set somebody straight, explain to somebody’:
habitual godōgēhseh ‘it’s explained to her’
static godōgēhseh ‘it’s been explained to her’
punctual wa’agodogēs ‘it was explained to her’.

*-yēthw- ‘plant’ has benefactive *-hse/-hs in *-yēthawahse/-yēthawahs ‘plant for somebody’:
habitual hagyētawahseh ‘he plants for me’
static hagyētawahseh ‘he has planted for me’
punctual wā:gyētwas ‘he planted for me’

Examples of benefactive *-’se/-’s:

*-hninō- ‘buy’ has benefactive *-’se/-’s in *-hninō’s(e)- ‘buy for someone’:
habitual hakninō’seh ‘he buys it for me’
static hakninō’seh ‘he has bought it for me’
punctual wā:khninō’s ‘he bought it for me’

*-nyakē- ‘escape’ has benefactive *-’se/-’s in *-’nyakē’se/-’nyakē’s ‘run away from’:
habitual shagō’nyagē’seh ‘he runs away from her’
static shagō’nyagē’seh ‘he has run away from her’
punctual o’shagō’nya:ɡē’s ‘he ran away from her’
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

*-yö- ‘arrive’ has benefactive *-së/-s‘ in *-yö-së/-yö-s ‘visit’:
  habitual hagyö’sëh ‘he visits me’
  stative hagyö’sëh ‘he’s visiting me’
  punctual wa:agyö’s ‘he visited me’

Benefactive *-i- is rare, occurs with specialized meanings, and has been found only in the habitual and stative aspects:

*-ihsak- ‘look for’ has benefactive *-i- in *-ihsaki- ‘look for for somebody’:
  habitual góihagihih ‘monkey’, literally ‘it looks for it for it’ (reference to grooming)
  stative shagoihihih ‘he has investigated her’
*-rihwahkw- ‘raise a topic’ has benefactive *-i- in *-rihwahkwi- ‘be forbidden to somebody’:
  stative hodi:wáhgwi:h ‘it’s forbidden to them’

5.5.8. The andative suffix. The andative suffix\(^4\) indicates that someone goes somewhere in order to do something. It corresponds to English constructions exemplified by ‘go fishing’, ‘go and eat’, or simply ‘go eat’. Its most common forms are *-h- and *-hn-. Less common are *-hs-, *-hshr-, *-h-, and *-n-. Following the andative the habitual aspect suffix is *-e’s, the stative *-őch, and the punctual *-a’.

Examples of andative *-h-:

*-atorat- ‘hunt’ has andative *-h- in *-atorath- ‘go hunting’:
  habitual hadówáte’s ‘he goes hunting’
  stative hodówátö’h ‘he’s gone hunting’
  punctual wa:dowáta’h ‘he went hunting’
*-ahyak- ‘pick berries’ has andative *-h- in *-ahyakh- ‘go berry-picking’:
  habitual yó:ya:ke’s ‘she goes berry-picking’
  stative go:ya:kö:h ‘she’s gone berry-picking’
  punctual wa:ö:ya:ka’h ‘she went berry-picking’
*-ihsak- ‘look for’ has andative *-h- in *-ihsakh- ‘go and look for’:
  habitual gihsa:ke’s ‘I go and look for it’
  stative aghsakö:h ‘I’ve gone and looked for it’
  punctual o’ghsaka’ ‘I went and looked for it’

Examples of andative *-hn-:

*-yö’së- ‘visit’ has andative *-hn- in *-yö’sehn- ‘go and visit’:
  habitual shagöyö’sëne’s ‘he goes to visit her’
  stative shagöyö’sënö:h ‘he’s gone to visit her’
  punctual o’shagoyö’sënö:h ‘he went to visit her’
*-hniönö- ‘buy’ has andative *-hniönö- ‘go and buy’:
  habitual agwá:nö:ne’s ‘we (pl ex) go and buy it’
  stative agwá:nö:nö:h ‘we’ve gone and bought it’
  punctual wa’agwa:nö:nö:h ‘we went and bought it’

---
\(^4\) Called the transient suffix in Chafe 1967. Also called the dislocative.
*-atekhöni- ‘eat’ has andative *-atekhönyahn- ‘go and eat’:
habitual hênödekönya:ne's ‘they go and eat’
static honödekönya:nö:h ‘they’ve gone and eaten’
punctual waënödékönỳá:nö ‘they went and ate’

Examples of andative *-hs-:

*-yëthw- ‘plant’ has andative *-yëthwahs- ‘go planting’
habitual høyëtwahse’s ‘he goes planting’
static høyëtwahsö:h ‘he’s gone planting’
wá:yëtwáhsa ‘he went planting’

*-ktö- ‘test’ has andative *-ktöhs- ‘go and test’:
habitual haktöhse’s ‘he goes and tests it’
static haktöhsö:h ‘he’s gone and tested it’
punctual wá:ktöhsa ‘he went and tested it’

*-yë’hi- (with patient prefix) ‘make a mistake’ has andative *-yë’hihs- ‘go and make mistakes’:
habitual høyë’hihse’s ‘he goes and makes mistakes’
static høyë’hihsö:h ‘he’s gone and made mistakes’
punctual wá:yë’hihša ‘he went and made mistakes’

Examples of andative *-hshr-:

*-atën- ‘watch over’ has andative *-atënhshr- ‘go and watch over’:
habitual hätënhshë’s ‘he goes and watches over it’
static hätënhshö:h ‘he’s gone and watched over it’
punctual wá:ätënhshë ‘he went and watched over it’

*-ya’tayeri- (with patient prefix) ‘gather, assemble’ has andative *-ya’tayerihsh- ‘go and assemble’:
habitual ogwáya’dayéishe’s ‘we go and assemble’
static ogwáya’dayéishö:h ‘we’ve gone and assembled’
punctual wá’ogwáya’dayéishë ‘we went and assembled’

*-atriyo- ‘fight’ has andative *-atriyohsh- ‘go and fight’:
habitual ogwadiyôshe’s ‘we go and fight’
static ogwadiyôshö:h ‘we’ve gone and fought’
punctual wá’ogwadiyôshë ‘we went and fought’

Examples of andative *-h-:

*-atawë- ‘bathe, swim’ has andative *-atawëh- ‘go swimming’:
habitual ogwadawë’he’s ‘we go swimming’
static ogwadawëhö:h ‘we’ve gone swimming’
punctual wá’ogwadawëhö ‘we went swimming’

*-atawëneye- (with duplicative prefix) ‘move about’ has andative *-atawëneyeh- ‘go for a walk’:
habitual da:dañëneyehë’s ‘he goes for walks’
static dañëneyehö:h ‘he’s gone for a walk’
punctual o’dañëneyehë ‘he went for a walk’

*-atkënëhs- ‘hold a meeting’ has andative *-atkënësh’sah- ‘go to church’:
habitual gatgënis’a’he’s ‘I go to church’
static agatgënis’a’hö:h ‘I’ve gone to church’
punctual o'gátgënis’a’ha’ ‘I went to church’

Examples of andative *-’n-:

*-hnekehr- ‘drink’ has andative *-hnekehra’n- ‘go and drink’:
  habitual knegé’a’ne’s ‘I go and drink’
  stative aknégé’a’nó:h ‘I’ve gone and drunk’
  future ēknégé’a’nó ‘I’ll go and drink’.

*-tséhóta’n- ‘go and smoke’:
  habitual gedzéóda’nó’s ‘I go and smoke’
  stative agédzéóda’nó:h ‘I’ve gone and smoked’
  future ēgédzéóda’nó ‘I’ll go and smoke’.

*-atkaht- ‘look at’ has andative *-atkahta’n- ‘go and look at’:
  habitual hatgáhda’nó’s ‘he goes and looks at it’
  stative hotgáhda’nó:h ‘he’s gone and looked at it’
  punctual wá:tghádá’nó ‘he went and looked at it’.

5.5.8.1. The andative plus purposive construction. The andative suffix is part of a unique construction in which it is followed by the purposive suffix. This andative-purposive combination usually indicates that something is imminent or impending, about to happen, or on the way to happening in the near future. It occurs both with and without the future and factual modal prefixes. Its placement following the andative suffix gives it the appearance of a fifth aspect suffix, supplementing the habitual, stative, punctual, and imperative aspect suffixes, but otherwise it has little in common with those other aspects and it occurs nowhere else. Its form is always *-e’.

With the future prefix there is a meaning of imminent occurrence.

*-athrori- ‘tell about’ has andative plus purposive in *-athroryahne’ ‘be about to tell about’.
  ēyótsonyá:ne’ ‘she’s about to tell about it’

With the factual prefix there is an added flavor of inevitability.

*-atorat- ‘hunt’ has andative plus purposive in *-atorathe’ ‘be about to go hunting’.
  wa:dowá:te’ ‘he’s (certainly) about to go hunting’

The andative-purposive combination in the absence of either the factual or future modal prefix means that someone has arrived at the present location for a purpose (hence the name purposive).

hatówáte’ ‘he came to hunt’.

Often, however, it is difficult to distinguish between purpose and imminent occurrence:

*-atgahnye- ‘play’ has andative plus purposive in *-atgahnye’he’ ‘be about to play’.
  hênótga:nyé’he’ ‘they’re about to play’ or ‘they’re here for the purpose of playing’.
*-a'swatô- ‘build a dam’ has andative plus purposive in *-a'swatöhne ‘be about to build a dam’:

hênô'swadô:ne ‘they’re about to build a dam’

The use of the purposive suffix in a subordinate purpose clause is discussed in 12.5.

5.5.9. The ambulative suffix. The ambulative suffix indicates that an event occurs, or that someone is in some state, while walking. Its shape is *-hne- and is followed by the stative aspect suffix *-’ or the stative-distributive suffix *-’s. Examples:

* -kë- ‘see’ has the ambulative suffix in *-këhne- ‘see while walking’:
  static hówôgë:ne ‘she sees him while walking’
* -atô- ‘say’ has the ambulative suffix in *-atöhne- ‘say while walking’:
  static hadô:ne ‘he says it while walking’
* -nôhaktani- ‘be sick’ has the ambulative suffix in *-nôhaktanihne- ‘be sick while walking’:
  static-distributive honô:kdâ:ni:ne’c he’s sick but he’s walking around’

5.5.10. The directive suffix. This suffix occurs with a few verb roots of motion to indicate that the motion takes place toward some location. Usually and perhaps always it is accompanied by the transllocative prefix *h(e)-. The prefix and suffix together can be translated simply ‘there’. Its shape is *-n-, which is replaced by length before the punctual aspect suffix *-’i. It takes the following aspect suffix forms: habitual *-ôhs, stative *-ô:h, punctual *-’i. Examples:

* -e- ‘go’ has the directive suffix in *-en- ‘go somewhere’:
  habitual hegenôs ‘I go there’
  stative hewagenô:h ‘I’ve gone there’
  punctual ho’ge: ‘I went there’
* -takhe- ‘run’ has the directive suffix in *-takhe- ‘run somewhere’:
  habitual yedâke:nôs ‘she runs there’
  stative heyagodâke:nô:h ‘she has run there’
  punctual (h)wa’édake: ‘she ran there’
* -atyê- ‘fly’ has the directive suffix in *-atyê- ‘fly somewhere’:
  habitual hewaje:nôs ‘it flies there’
  stative heyojenô:h ‘it has flown there’
  punctual ho’wa:je: ‘it flew there’

5.5.11. The archaic reversive suffix. This suffix indicates the reverse of what is meant by the verb root or base alone. It appears with fewer roots or bases than the new reversive suffix described below in 5.5.12. It has the shape *-hs- and takes the following aspect forms: habitual *-ôhs, stative *-ô:h, punctual *-’i. Examples:

* -hwanh- ‘tie up, wrap’ has the archaic reversive suffix in *-hwanhâh- ‘untie, unwrap’:
  habitual ha:wâhahsôs ‘he unties it’
  stative ho:wâhahsô:h ‘he has untied it’
  punctual wâ:wâhâ:si ‘he untied it’
* -ë’nyore- and duplicative prefix ‘put on one’s gloves’, literally ‘cover one’s hands’, has the archaic reversive suffix in *-ë’nyoreh- ‘take off one’s gloves’:
  habitual deyë’nyowéhâhsôs ‘she takes off her gloves’
stative deyagawē’nyowëhsō:h ‘she’s taken off her gloves’
punctual o’jē’nyowëhsi ‘she took off her gloves’

*-atra’nët- ‘be stuck’ has the archaic reversive suffix in *

habitual wadá’nédáhsōs ‘it comes unstuck’

stative odá’nédáhsō:h ‘it’s come unstuck’
punctual o’wadá’nédahsi ‘it came unstuck’

5.5.12. The new reversive suffix. More common is the new reversive suffix

(Loansbury’s infective)5, which also indicates the reverse of what is meant by the verb

root or base alone. It has the shape *-kw- (*-ko- with the punctual aspect), and takes the

following aspect forms: habitual *-ahs, stative *-ëh, punctual *-. Examples:

*-nhotō- ‘close the door’ has the new reversive suffix in *

habitual hahodögwas ‘he opens the door’

stative hohodögwēh ‘he has opened the door’
punctual wá:hodō:go ‘he opened the door’

*-niyöt- ‘hang’ has the new reversive suffix in *

habitual yeniyöda:gwas ‘she takes it down’

stative goniyöda:gwēh ‘she’s taken it down’
punctual wa’enyiyodago ‘she took it down’

*-o’sohr- ‘cover’ has the new reversive suffix in *

habitual go’só:gwas ‘I uncover it’

stative agó’so:agwēh ‘I’ve uncovered it’
punctual o’go’so:ágō ‘I uncovered it’

5.5.13. The facilitative suffix. The facilitative indicates that something occurs with

little external motivation, easily. It has the shape *-hsk- and is always followed by the

stative aspect suffix *-ö:h. Examples:

*-hni- ‘bark’ has the facilitative suffix in *

stative o:nísö:h ‘it barks at every little thing’

*-wyë’he- ‘learn’ has the facilitative suffix in *

stative hodiyë’hësgö:h ‘they learn easily’

*-nikhrēh- ‘forget’ has the facilitative suffix in *

stative go’ngëshësgö:h ‘she forgets easily, is forgetful’

5.5.14. The eventuative suffix. The eventuative indicates that something occurs in the

course of events, eventually, sooner or later. It has the shape *-hs- and is always followed by the

stative aspect suffix *-ö:h. Examples:

*-eheyō- ‘die’ has the eventuative suffix in *

stative hawë:yoś’öh ‘eventually he died’

*-ahtēty- ‘go, set out’ has the eventuative suffix in *

stative honóhëdjöś’öh ‘eventually they left’.

*-yō- ‘arrive’ has the eventuative suffix in *

stative hodiyoś’öh ‘they arrived eventually’

5 In Chafe 1967 the opposite. Also called the undoer.
5.5.15. Combinations of derivational suffixes. A derivational suffix may be followed by another derivational suffix. The following are representative examples.

It is common for the causative suffix, in one of the various forms listed in 5.5.4, to be followed by the instrumental suffix *-hkwo- described in 5.5.5 to form a word that has been lexicalized as a way of describing an object that is used for some purpose. Typically this construction occurs with the feminine singular agent prefix.

Causative *-t- plus instrumental *-hkwo- in yödoišedahgwa’ ‘couch’, literally ‘one uses it for resting’

Causative *-t- plus instrumental *-hkwo- in yótge’owá: dáhgwa’ ‘shampoo’, literally ‘one uses it to wash one’s hair’

Causative *-hst- plus instrumental *-hkwo- in gáéhdiyósdahgwa’ ‘fertilizer’, literally ‘one uses it to improve the soil’

The causative suffix may also be followed by the benefactive suffix (5.5.7), which takes the form *-ni-/-ë-. Examples:

Causative *-ht- plus benefactive *-ni-/-ë- in *shahnihtani/-shahnihte- ‘annoy’, literally ‘cause fear to someone’: agéscha:nihdanih ‘it annoys me’

Also in *-rihwehtani/-rihwehtë- ‘give someone something to say’: waowóiwëhdë’ ‘they gave it to him to say’

Causative *-t- plus benefactive *-ni-/-ë- in *rihönya’taní/-rihönya’të- ‘give someone a reason for something’: hóíönya’danih ‘they’ve given him a reason for it’

The following are a few other lexicalized extensions of the causative suffix.

Causative *-st- plus inchoative *-he- in *-atero’sthe- ‘become friends’: waonödéo’sthet ‘they became friends’

Causative *-ht- plus ambulative *-hne- in go’ënë:hda:ne ‘poison ivy’, literally ‘a stick that leaves something while one is walking’

Causative *-ht- plus distributive *-ö- in gagáehdëhdë ‘cornbread’, literally ‘dropped hulls’

Other derivational suffix combinations include the following.

New reversive *-kw- plus causative *-ht- in wa’őjëda:gwat ‘she got up from where she was sitting’

Also in dewadìhsadenyögwáhdëh ‘I’m turning one way and then the other’

New reversive -kw- plus benefactive *-hs- in waonödáwtä:gwas ‘it was separated from them’
Also in *wa'ögwa:jó:yoda:gwas* ‘we lost someone we depended on’, *literally* ‘the sky fell down on us’

New reversive *-kw-* plus distributive *-*hö-* in *wáóno'dzodagwá:o* ‘he took his teeth out’

Instrumental *-*hkw-* plus causative *-*t-* in *hadëñóöhgwa:ta* ‘he makes it difficult for himself, avoids doing it’

Instrumental *-*hkw-* plus benefactive *-*ni-* in *hodëñóöhgwanih* ‘he’s making it difficult for himself, avoids doing it’

Distributive *-*hö-* plus instrumental *-*hkw-* in *deyóödëdyáshöhgwa* ‘chiefs’, *literally* ‘one uses it for giving names to their nations’

Distributive *-*nyö-* plus instrumental *-*hkw-* in *Ganóöhgwá:nyök* ‘a feast for the dead’, *literally* ‘let it be used for expressions of love’
6. VERB MORPHOLOGY PART 4: EXTENDED ASPECT SUFFIXES

6.1. Introduction

The three aspect suffixes that were introduced in 3.2 and 3.3 (habitual, stative, and punctual) may be extended by the addition of any of four postaspect suffixes that carry additional meanings related to aspect or tense. They include the following:

- stative-distributive (6.2)
- past (6.3)
- progressive (6.4)
- continuative (6.5)

6.2. The stative-distributive suffix

This suffix adds a distributive meaning to the stative aspect, extending the meaning of the word to cover multiple varied entities. Its meaning thus overlaps with that of the distributive derivational suffix described in 5.5.6. The first examples below show its most common form, *'-s, which replaces a final *h or * of the stative aspect suffix, along with a shortening of any preceding long vowel. Its precise meaning depends on whether the stative verb expresses a property (with an adjective-like meaning) or an action. The following are examples of properties.

- **waga:yó’s** ‘various things are old’ (*wakayó’s)
  - Cf. **waga:yöh** ‘it’s old’
- **otgi’s** ‘various things are dirty’ (*otki’s)
  - Cf. **otgi** ‘it’s dirty’
- **ganóhsasdë’s** ‘various big houses’ (*kanōhsastë’s)
  - Cf. **ganóhsasdë**: ‘big house’
- **ganóhsi:yo’s** ‘railroad cars’, *literally* ‘nice houses’ (*kanōhsiyö’s)
  - Cf. **ganóhsi:yo:h** ‘nice house’

With actions the stative-distributive suffix indicates that the event is distributed in space. The best English translation often includes the word ‘around’, as in the first two examples below. The distributive meaning is especially clear in the third example:

- **hada:ke’s** ‘he’s running around’ (*hatakhe’s)
  - Cf. **hada:ke** ‘he’s running’
- **gaje’s** ‘it’s flying around’ (*katye’s)
  - Cf. **gaje** ‘it’s flying’
- **hóio’dë’s** ‘he’s working at odd jobs’ (*horiho’të’s)
  - Cf. **hóio’dë**: ‘he’s working’
6.2.1. Other forms of the stative-distributive suffix. Although the most common form of this suffix is *'-s, as in the examples above, certain other verb bases condition other, partially different forms.

Examples of stative-distributive *-hs:

o:ni:yös ‘several things are tough, hard’   (*ohniröhs)
   Cf. o:ni:yöh ‘it’s tough, hard’
gowa:nës ‘several things are big’ (also gowa:në’s)   (*kowanëhs)
   Cf. gowa:nëh ‘it’s big’

Examples of stative-distributive *-ö’s (following a stop):

gagë:dö’s ‘several things are white’   (*kakëratö’s)
   Cf. gagë:én ‘it’s white’
o:yágahiyehdö’s ‘several things are sharp’   (*ohyakarhiyehtö’s)
   Cf. o:yágahiyet ‘it’s sharp’

Examples of stative-distributive *-öhs (following s):

yösös ‘several things are long’   (*yösöhs)
   Cf. i:yös ‘it’s long’
gadësös ‘several things are thick’   (*gadësöhs)
   Cf. ga:dës ‘it’s thick’

6.3. The past suffix

This suffix signals an event that took place, or a state that was in effect, at a time before the present or before some other reference time. It takes several forms, which must be described separately for its combination with the habitual aspect and with the stative aspect. It also replaces the punctual aspect suffix in combination with the future modal prefix to form a future perfect passive construction. It does not occur with the punctual aspect in combination with the factual modal prefix, a construction that is itself commonly used to locate an event in the past.

6.3.1. Forms of the past suffix with the habitual aspect. The several forms of the habitual-past combination are all derived from an early form *-hkwa’. The *-wa’ portion of this sequence, however, appears only with habitual suffixes that end in *s, in which case the past form is *-kwa’ (> -gw’a):

hadówwäsgwa’ ‘he used to hunt’   (*hatoratskwa’)
   Cf. hado:wäs ‘he hunts’
hëné’sgw’a ‘they used to be around’   (*hëne’skwa’)
   Cf. hë:ne’s ‘they’re around’
hadigowánísgwa’ ‘they were big, important’ (*hatikowanëhskwa’)
Cf. hadigowa:nëh ‘they’re big, important’

If the habitual form without the past suffix ends in a glottal stop, the glottal stop is replaced by *hk:

ha:négehak ‘he used to drink’ (*hahnekehrhahk)
Cf. ha:négeha’ ‘he drinks’
keya:stak ‘I used to call her’ (*kheyasthahk)
Cf. keya:sta’ ‘I call her’
heswanödayëdáhgwa’ ‘you (pl) used to camp there’ (*heswanatayëtahkwahk)
Cf. heswanödayëdáhgwa’ ‘you camp there’

If the habitual form without the past suffix ends in h, the past form is *-ahk:

hënótšowiak ‘they use to tell about it’ (*hënathrorihahk)
Cf. hënótšo:wh ‘they tell about it’
agwádö:k ‘we used to say it’ (*akwatöhahk)
Cf. agwa:döh ‘we say it’
hadáwëök ‘he used to bathe, swim’ (*hatawëhahk)
Cf. hada:wëh ‘he bathes, swims’

6.3.2. Forms of the past suffix with the stative aspect. If the stative form without the past suffix ends in h, the h is preserved and the past ending is *-na’ (> -nö’). If the preceding vowel was long it is shortened, but the h in the sequence *-hna’ is then replaced by length:

niyó’dë:nö’ ‘the way it was’ (*niyo’tëhna’)
Cf. niyó’dë:ch ‘the way it is’
geksá’diyó:nö’ ‘I was a good child’ (*keksa’tiyohna’)
Cf. geksá’diyoh ‘I’m a good child’
hahsënowäänë:nö’ ‘he used to be a chief’ (*hahsënowanëhna’)
Cf. hahsënowa:nëh ‘he’s a chief’, literally ‘his name is great’

If the stative form without the past suffix ends in a glottal stop, the past form is *-hk, which replaces the glottal stop. The h causes the preceding vowel to be short, but is then lost:

tadinögek ‘they used to live there’ (*thatinagrehk)
Cf. tadinöge ‘they live there’
hënö:hek ‘they were alive’ (*hënönhehk)
Cf. hënö:he ‘they are alive’
ganóhsö:ðök ‘there used to be houses’ (*kanöhsotöhk)
Cf. ganóhsö:dö ‘houses’
After a nonlaryngeal consonant the past form is *-ahk. The h causes the preceding vowel to be short, but is then lost:

**hodiýë:da**k ‘they used to have it’

Cf. **hodi:ye** ‘they have it’ (This root has the form *-yë'- before a vowel.)

**tshi’jö:da**k ‘you used to live there’

Cf. **tshi’jö’** ‘you live there’ (This root has form *-i’trö' before a vowel.)

**honöhsö:da**k ‘his house (in the past)’

Cf. **honöhsö:t** ‘his house’

### 6.3.3. The future perfect passive construction

The past suffix replaces the punctual aspect suffix in combination with the future modal prefix to create a future perfect passive construction. The *h* of the punctual ending is replaced by *hk*, whose *h* shortens the preceding vowel and is then lost.

**ëöwönyok** ‘they will have killed him’

Cf. **ëöwönyo’** ‘they will kill him’

The preceding vowel is short even when the punctual ending has a long vowel.

**ëgéhsadök** ‘it will have been buried’

Cf. **ëgéhsadö:** ‘I will bury it’

### 6.4. The progressive suffix

The progressive suffix indicates that an event or state is spread over several locations in space or time or both. It differs from the distributive derivational suffix (5.5.6) and the stative-distributive suffix (6.2) in the fact that the separate events or states are arrayed along a temporal or spatial continuum. This suffix is added to whatever stative aspect form is determined by the verb base, but is then itself followed by any of the three aspect suffixes, as shown in Figure 6.1. Its basic form is *-atyë'- after a consonant and *-tyë' after a vowel. Its aspect forms are habitual *-(a)tyë's, stative *-(a)tye', and punctual *-(a)tye'.

![Figure 6.1. Position of the progressive suffix](image)

Examples of locations arrayed in space:
hóíhsagò:je’ ‘he’s looking around for it’
Cf. hóíhsagóh ‘he’s looking for it’
jeda:je’s ‘she’s standing around there’
Cf. i:je’t ‘she’s standing there’
niyögwe’dáge:aje’ ‘how many people are arrayed’
Cf. niyögwe’dáge:h ‘how many people’

Examples of locations arrayed in time:

ohëó:ójé’ ‘it’s gradually becoming light, daybreak’
Cf. ohëóh ‘it has become light’
onenöje’ ‘it’s getting progressively warmer’
Cf. onenö ‘it’s warm’
ögwátoda:je’ ‘we are listening along’
Cf. ögwátö:de’ ‘we are hearing it’

Examples of locations arrayed in both space and time:

hodé’gwë:ójé’ ‘he’s running away’
Cf. hodé’gwëh ‘he has run away’
hodigeða:je’ ‘they’re laying it down all along’
Cf. hodigeö ‘they’ve laid it down’
niyo:weje’ ‘how far it’s going along’
Cf. niyo:we ‘how far it is’
gaöyote’ ‘the boat is moving along in the water’
Cf. gaöyo ‘the boat is in the water’

Any restrictions on cooccurrence are governed, not by the preceding stative aspect suffix but by the following word-final aspect suffix, where any of the three aspects—habitual, stative, and punctual—can occur. For example, in the following word the final suffix is the punctual, with which the future prefix is compatible;

dëtodiyo:je’ ‘they will be coming back’
Cf. detodiyo:je’ ‘they are coming back’

6.5. The continuative suffix

The continuative suffix indicates that an event or state continues over a period of time. Because the three modal prefixes—factual, future, and hypothetical—normally require the punctual suffix, verbs with the habitual and stative suffixes do not normally occur with those modal prefixes. The continuative suffix, however, overcomes this restriction by allowing one of the modal prefixes to occur with a habitual or stative verb. For that
reason it has sometimes been called the *modalizer* suffix.\(^6\) When it is added to a habitual or stative verb, that verb can occur with any of the three modal prefixes, as sketched in Figure 6.2. The modal prefix may, however, be lacking if the verb is an imperative (6.5.3).

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>modal prefix</th>
<th>aspect suffix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>factual</td>
<td>verb base</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>future</td>
<td>habitual</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>hypothetical</td>
<td>stative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>continuative</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 6.2. Position and cooccurrences of the continuative suffix

In Seneca the continuative suffix always ends in \(k\). In some of the related languages this \(k\) is followed by a punctual ending, as with Mohawk -\(ke'\). In Seneca the \(e'\) has been lost and the \(k\) stands alone in word-final position.

### 6.5.1. The continuative suffix with the habitual aspect

With the habitual aspect the continuative suffix shows multiple occurrences of an event. It occurs most often with the future modal prefix, yielding a meaning translatable as ‘will keep doing it’.

With the future modal prefix and a habitual aspect suffix that ends in \(s\), the continuative has the form \(*-ek (>-e:k)*.\)

\[ëyódishádë'se:k \text{ ‘moisture will keep falling’} \quad (*ëyotishatë'sek)\]
\[dëgadenyóhse:k \text{ ‘it will keep changing’} \quad (*tëkatenyóhsek)\]

With the future modal prefix and a habitual aspect suffix that would otherwise have the form \(*-h\) or \(*-ha'\), the habitual plus continuative combination has the form \(*-hak (>-h)a:k)*.

\[ë:nödööök \text{ ‘they will keep saying it’} \quad (*ëhënatöhak)\]
\[ëyóhsahaxk \text{ ‘people will keep beginning it’} \quad (*ëyóhsawhak)\]

With the future modal prefix and a habitual aspect suffix that has the form \(*-a'\) (following the instrumental suffix \(*-hkw\)*), the habitual plus continuative combination has the form \(*-ak (>-a:k)\).

\[ëgyá:'dáhgwa:k \text{ ‘I’ll keep using it’} \quad (*ëkyera’tahkwak)\]
\[ëgáda'díhsodáhgwa:k \text{ ‘I’ll keep using it for my cane’} \quad (*ëkata’tihsotahkwak)\]

---

\(\)\(^6\) E.g., in Mithun and Woodbury 1980.
The habitual plus continuative combination may also occur with the hypothetical modal prefix, where it can be translated ‘should (or might) keep doing something’.

áëněnōhdónyō:ök ‘they should keep thinking’  (*aahëněnōhtönyöhak)
á:sgwëdë:hse:k ‘you (plural) should keep being kind to me’  (*aaskwëtërahse:k)

The habitual plus continuative combination has not been observed with the factual prefix.

6.5.2. The continuative suffix with the stative aspect. With the stative aspect the continuative signals the prolonged occurrence of a state. It occurs most often with the future modal prefix, yielding meanings translatable as ‘will continue to be a certain way’.

If the stative ending alone consists of a glottal stop preceded by a vowel, the stative plus continuative combination replaces the glottal stop with *k (> :k).

ëgéöya:dek ‘there will continue to be a sky’  (*ëkëröhyatek)
ëyödihsnöyü:đö:k ‘they will continue to have names’  (*ëyotihsënayëtök)

If the stative ending alone ends in *h, the continuative adds *-ak and the *h of *-hak is lost after determining a preceding accent.

ëwiyo:ak ‘it will continue to be good’  (*ëwiyohak)
neyö’dë:ök ‘the way it will continue to be’  (*nëyo’tëhak)

If the verb base ends in a consonant, the stative plus continuative combination has the form *-a’k.

ëga:da’k ‘it will continue to be standing’  (*ëkata’k)
ëjöhsawa’k ‘it will continue to be beginning there’  (*ëtyöhsawa’k)

The stative plus continuative combination with the hypothetical modal prefix yields meanings such as ‘should (or might) continue to be a certain way’.

da:yagýa:di:ak ‘we (exclusive dual) might be together’  (*taayakyatihak)
áédwë’jö:da’k ‘we (inclusive plural) might continue to stay’  (*aetwë’tröta’k)

The stative plus continuative combination with the factual modal prefix signals a continuing state that is currently ongoing.

esá:negé:ök ‘you are continually drunk’  (*esahnekehrëhak)
daonōdawënyé:ak ‘they are continually moving about there’  (*tahonatawënyehak)
6.5.3. The continuative suffix with imperatives. The continuative suffix occurs with imperative verbs to yield meanings such as ‘keep doing it!’.

sniyé:ök ‘keep doing it! (dual)’  (*sniyehëhak)
dësnítá:hgórje'se:k ‘keep on talking! (dual)’  (*tësnitharahkóhatye’sek)
sajé:ök ‘keep still, stay calm!’  (*satyerëhak)

There is, however, a preference for using the future prefix for the imperative meaning.

ëhsátgaëöök ‘(you will) keep watching it!’  (*ëhsatkaharöök)
dëhsawënyë:ak ‘(you will) keep stirring it!’  (*tëhsawënyehak)
    (both with stative plus continuative)
7. NOUN MORPHOLOGY

7.1. Introduction

The morphology of Seneca nouns is considerably simpler than that of verbs, although the two bear some resemblances. As shown in Figure 7.1, a morphological noun is built on a noun base, which in the simplest case consists of a noun root. The base is preceded by a pronominal prefix, whose form resembles that of certain verbal pronominal prefixes but whose function is different. The pronominal prefix may be neutral in the sense that it contributes no specific pronominal meaning, or it may indicate the alienable or inalienable possessor of whatever is denoted by the base. The base is followed by one of three suffixes that are unrelated to the aspect suffixes of verbs. The simple noun suffix shows nothing more than the fact that the word is a noun, or the noun may have a suffix that shows an external or internal location.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pronominal prefix</th>
<th>noun base</th>
<th>noun suffix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>neutral</td>
<td>alienable</td>
<td>simple noun suffix</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>inalienable</td>
<td>noun root</td>
<td>external locative</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 7.1. Minimal noun structure

7.2. The noun suffixes

7.2.1. The simple noun suffix. This suffix contributes nothing to the meaning of the word beyond the fact that it is a morphological noun. Its form is usually *-a’ (> -ö’ in a nasalizing environment). The following have neuter prefixes *ka- (> ga-) or *o-.

osga:wa’ ‘bushes, brush’ (*oskawa’)
o’wà:’ ‘meat’ (*o’wahr’a’)
ga:öwö’ ‘boat’ (*kahöwa’)

A small number of morphological nouns end with h rather than a glottal stop.

gayó:wa’h ‘moccasin’ (*kayohwah)
gëdzöh ‘fish’ (*kaitshah)
gë:nöh ‘skin, leather, handkerchief’ (*kaihnah)

7.2.2. The external locative suffix. This suffix can usually be translated ‘at’ or ‘on’. Its most common form is *-a’keh (> -a’geh).

osgáwa’geh ‘at the bushes’ (*oskawa’keh)
gáöwö’geh ‘at the boat’ (*kahöwa’keh)
gë’öhgá’geh ‘on the bank’ (*kai’ögara’keh)
Ga:nówö’geh ‘at the rapids, Kahnawake Mohawk Reserve’ (*kahnawa’keh)
In some cases, particularly after a base or full word ending in \textit{h}, the external locative has the form *-(h)neh.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{gashó:neh} ‘in the back’ (*kashó:neh)
\item \textbf{no’yé:neh} ‘at mother’s house’ (cf. \textit{no’yéh} ‘mother’) (*no’yé:neh)
\item \textbf{ógwé’ówé:neh} ‘where Indians are, on the reservation’ (*ógwé’ówe:neh)
\end{itemize}

The *-(h)neh form occurs in the names of several seasons of the year.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{goshé:neh} ‘in the winter’ (*koshre:neh)
\item \textbf{gëgwë:neh} ‘in the spring’ (*kaikwitek:neh)
\item \textbf{gëhé:neh} ‘in the summer’ (*kaikhe:neh)
\item \textbf{Nisgówakneh} ‘January’ (*niskowakneh)
\item \textbf{O:ýäikneh} ‘June’ (*ohyarik:neh)
\item \textbf{Sáisgekneh} ‘July’ (*sariskek:neh)
\item \textbf{Gëdë’ókneh} ‘August’ (*kaitë’ók:neh)
\item \textbf{Gëökneh} ‘October’ (*kairak:neh)
\item \textbf{Gahsá’kneh} ‘November’ (*kahsa’k:neh)
\end{itemize}

It is sometimes attached to English borrowings.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{store-neh} ‘at the store’
\item \textbf{backway-neh} ‘by the back way’
\end{itemize}

\textbf{7.2.3. The internal locative suffix.} This suffix, with the form *-akö:h (> -agö:h), specifies an internal location, usually inside something.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{gaöwögö:h} ‘in the boat’ (*kahöwakö:h)
\item \textbf{osgawagö:h} ‘in the bushes’ (*oskawakö:h)
\item \textbf{odeönöshägö:h} ‘in the shade’ (*oatéhónoshrákö:h)
\item \textbf{ganödagö:h} ‘in the town’ (*kanatakö:h)
\item \textbf{yöédzagö:h} ‘in the earth’ (*yöhwétsakö:h)
\item \textbf{Ga:nöwögö:h} ‘Warren, PA’, \textit{literally} ‘in the rapids’ (*kahnawakö:h)
\end{itemize}

Sometimes the location is ‘under’ rather than ‘in’.

\begin{itemize}
\item \textbf{owisägö:h} ‘under the ice’ (*owisrakö:h)
\item \textbf{gë’oghä:go:h} ‘under the bank’ (*kai’ökarakö:h)
\item \textbf{ganöhsagö:h} ‘in or under the house’ (*kanöhsakö:h)
\end{itemize}

\textbf{7.3. Positional verb roots in place of the simple noun suffix}

Certain noun roots do not occur with the simple noun suffix (7.2.1), but are instead incorporated with stative forms of verb roots that have roughly positional meanings: *-yë’ ‘be laid out’, *-ot ‘be vertical or standing upright’, or *-te’ ‘be in place’.
7.3.1. Examples of noun roots with *-yë’ ‘be laid out’.

ganödayë’ ‘town’ (*kanatayë’)
gēda:yë’ ‘field’ (*kaitayë’)

7.3.2. Examples of noun roots with *-ot ‘be vertical or standing upright’.

ganôhso:t ‘house’ (*kanöhsot)
o’ha:ot ‘rainbow’ (*o’harot)

7.3.3. Examples of noun roots with *-te’ ‘be in place’. These are the most numerous roots of this type, and include geographical meanings such as

yöödzade’ ‘the earth’ (*yöhwetsate’)
onödade’ ‘hill’ (*onötate’)
gasdë:de’ ‘cliff, rocky bank’ (*kastëhrate’)
gaenöde’ ‘ridge’ (*kahenate’)
ögöwöde’ ‘knoll, ridge’ (*oköwate’)
yö:nya:de’ ‘flat plain’ (*yöhnnyate’)
o:ade’ ‘road’ (*ohate’)
gêhsa:de’ ‘room’ (*kaihsate’)
gayanöde’ ‘tracks’ (*kayanate’)
gêhö:de’ ‘river’ (*kaiyrate’)
äge:nöwöde’ ‘rapids’ (*kahnavate’)
gëöyade’ ‘sky’ (*karöhyate’)

And divisions of time such as

yoshë:de’ ‘winter, year’ (*yoshrate’)
gagëhöde’ ‘summer’ (*kakënhate’)
wë:nishade’ ‘day, today’ (*wënhnihrate’)
wë:në’dade’ ‘month’ (*wëhnëtate’)
wahtödade’ ‘night’ (*wahtörate’)

As well as

o:ade’ ‘the wind’ (*owrate’)
wasgwë:de’ ‘shed, porch, roof’ (*waskwate’)
oshë:de’ ‘muscle, cord’ (*oshrate’)

7.4. Pronominal prefixes with nouns

Noun roots and bases are usually preceded by pronominal prefixes. However, rather than signaling the agents of events or the patients of states as is the case with verbs, these prefixes often show a possessor of whatever is denoted by the noun root or base.
7.4.1. The neuter prefixes. If the entity is not possessed, the noun root or base is preceded by one of the two neuter prefixes (numbers 15 and 24 in Table 3.1), where the neuter patient prefix is *yo-/yaw-ya- (lacking the y in word-initial position) and the neuter agent prefix is *ka-/kë-/w-/y-. These prefixes have nothing to do with the gender of the noun root or base but are unpredictably selected by it. The patient prefix is historically the older of the two, and there is a tendency for the agent prefix to accompany roots and bases whose meanings are of more recent origin.

With the neuter patient prefix:

owä:nö’ ‘sugar’ (*orana’)
o:nyë’sda’ ‘chestnut’ (*ohnye’sta’)
o’në:ya’ ‘bone’ (*o’nye’a’)
odë:shäh ‘medicine ceremony’ (*oatëshra’)

With the neuter agent prefix:

gashé’da’ ‘bottle, jug’ (*kashe’ta’)
ga’séhda’ ‘wagon, car’ (*ka’srehta’)
gahóá’ ‘door’ (*kanhohá’)
gahé’da’ ‘porcupine’ (*kanhe’ta’)

7.4.2. Alienable possession. The full range of patient prefixes can be attached to a noun root or base to indicate alienable possession, the possession of something that need not be permanent.

gahigwä: ‘hat’ (*karhikwa’ra’)
aghigwa:a’ ‘my hat’ (*akrhikwa’ra’)
hohipwä: ‘his hat’ (*horhikwa’ra’)
etc.

gawisda’ ‘cup’ (*kahwihs’ta’)
akwisda’ ‘my cup’ (*akhwihs’ta’)
gowisda’ ‘her cup’ (*kohwihs’ta’)
etc.

gá’ashäh ‘basket’ (*ka’ahshra’)
agé’ashäh ‘my basket’ (*ake’ahshra’)
go’ashäh ‘her basket’ (*ko’ahshra’)
etc.

ganóhsot ‘house’ (*kanóhsot)
aknóhsot ‘my house’ (*aknóhsot)
ögwánóhsot ‘our house’ (*ökwanóhsot)
etc.

7.4.3. Inalienable possession. Agent prefixes indicate inalienable possession, the possession of something that cannot normally be taken away. Almost all examples are permanent body parts. Although it is not obligatory, usually such words often end with the external locative suffix *-a’keh (> -a’geh), even when the external locative meaning ‘on’ is not necessarily present.

os’óhdá’ ‘hand’ (*os’ohta’)

A Grammar of the Seneca Language

89
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

ges’óhda’ or ges’óhda’geh ‘my hand’ (*ges’ohta’keh)
yes’óhda’ or yes’óhda’geh ‘her hand’ (*yes’ohta’keh)

etc.

onë:sha’ ‘arm’ (*onësha’)

knësha’ or knëshá’geh ‘my arm’ (*knësha’keh)
hanë:sha’ or hanë:sha’geh ‘his arm’ (*hanësha’keh)

etc.

ogö:da’ ‘nose’ (*oköta’)

gégö:da’ or gégö:da’geh ‘my nose’ (*keköta’keh)
segö:da’ or segö:da’geh ‘your nose’ (*seköta’keh)

etc.

ogà:’ ‘eye’ (*okahra’)

gegà:’ or gegà:’geh ‘my eye’ (*kekahra’keh)
yegà:’ or yegà:’geh ‘her eye’ (*yekahra’keh)

etc.

Inalienable possession is also evident in

kwajì:yä’ ‘my family’ (*khwatsira’)
ye:wajì:yä’ ‘her family’ (*yehwatsira’)

etc.

The following illustrates a creative use of the alienable-inalienable distinction.

óóhda’ ‘ear’ (*oahöhta’),
gáóhda’ or gáóhda’geh ‘my ear’ (*kahöhta’keh)
gáóhdagö:h ‘in my ear’ (*kahöhtakö:h)

etc.

but also with a patient prefix

agáóhda’ ‘my interpreter’ (alienable ear) (*akahöhta’)

7.4.4. Nouns that lack a pronominal prefix. Some nouns whose roots or bases begin with a, e, or è, where the neuter agent pronominal prefix w- might be expected, lack the w and thus lack an overt pronominal prefix.

awëö’ ‘flower’ (*awëha’)
adéhsa’ ‘nest’ (*atehsa’)

(cf. odéhsa’ ‘its nest’)
a’sgwìhsa’ ‘ax, hatchet’ (*a’skwihsa’)
awëö’dà: ‘pipe, tube, stovepipe, lamp’ (*awëoro’ta’)
adodà: ‘shoulder belt, suspenders’ (*atotara’)

(‘put something over oneself’)
ajà’doda:a’ ‘saddle’ (*atyà’totara’)

(‘put one’s body over something’)
ehdá’geh ‘at the bottom’ (*ehda’keh)
è:nì’da: ‘month, moon (as a period of time)’ (*ènhì’ta’)
è:nyäsì:gä: ‘brooch’ (*ènyaskara’)
è’nìga:a: ‘hoop’ (*è’nìkahra’)
è’nìsì:gä: ‘wheel’ (*è’nìshkara’)

90
7.5. Prepronominal prefixes with nouns

Although the prepronominal prefixes described in Chapter 4 are for the most part reserved for verbs, there are occasional cases where they are attached to specific nouns. The prepronominal prefixes that have been observed to occur occasionally with nouns include the repetitive, cislocative, partitive, coincident, and negative.

7.5.1. The repetitive prefix with nouns. This prefix, based on the form *s-, indicates a specific selection from a range of choices. When combined with the nominal distributive suffix *-shó' it can be translated ‘every’ or ‘each’.

swë:ni'dashó’ ‘every month’ (cf. wë:ni'dade’ ‘month’)
dzögwé'dashó’ ‘each person’ (cf. ö:gweh ‘person’) (repetitive *sy- > dz-)
dzagónöhsax:shó’ ‘from house to house’ (cf. gonöhsö: ‘her house’)

7.5.2. The cislocative prefix with nouns. This prefix, based on the form *t-, indicates that an object is located in some contextually identified place.

tga:wa:ssa’ ‘the snowsnake there’ (cf. ga:wa:ssa’ ‘snowsnake’)
jokdé‘shó’ ‘the roots there’ (cf. okdé ‘root’) (*ty- > j-)

7.5.3. The partitive prefix with nouns. This prefix, based on the form *ni-, focuses attention on the choice of a specific instance of a category.

nigá’ashá’ ‘what basket it is’ (cf. ga’áshá’ ‘basket’)
niáwaji:zá’ ‘what his family is’ (cf. ha:waji:zá’ ‘his family’)
níáhsë:nó’ ‘what his name is’ (cf. ha:hsë:nó’ ‘his name’)
niyog :’ ‘what the fare is’ (cf. ogä:gwe:göh ‘full fare, full price’)

7.5.4. The coincident prefix with nouns. This prefix, based on the form *tshi- (> tší-), indicates when the referent of the pronominal prefix was in the state expressed by the noun root.

tšiyágwaksá’šó’öh ‘when we (exclusive plural) were children) (root *-ks-)
tšidwáksá’šó’öh ‘when we (inclusive plural) were children)
tšimánde ‘when it was Monday, last Monday’ (borrowed from English)

With the coincident *tsha’- (> tsá-) and duplicative (*te- > de-) prefixes:

tsa’dedzögwex ‘all you (plural) people’

7.5.5. The negative prefix with nouns. The negative prefix *te’- (> de’) is occasionally attached to a noun.

de’gagá:’ ‘not a story’ (i.e. a fact) (cf. gaga:a’ ‘story’)
de’gánó’dza’ ‘not a pot’ (cf. gonó’dza’ ‘pot’)
de’swáiwa’ ‘not your fault’ (cf. óíwa’ ‘cause’)

91
7.6. Nominalized verb bases

There are two suffixes that can be added to a verb base to yield a derived noun base. Such a noun base conveys the idea of an entity that is associated in some way with the event or state conveyed by the underlying verb base, but there is no consistent way to predict what that meaning will be.

7.6.1. The nominalizing suffix *-hshr- / *-shr-. This nominalizer occurs with a large number of verb bases. The choice between the two forms is unpredictable. Often the derived noun base is followed by the simple noun suffix *-a’. Like other noun bases it may be preceded by either a neuter patient or a neuter agent pronominal prefix. There is a tendency for words that are historically older to begin with the neuter patient prefix, usually *o-.

oté’shá ‘flour, meal’ (base *-the’shr- from *-the’t- ‘pound corn’)
onowá’shá ‘soap’ (base *-nohara’shr- from *-nohar- ‘wash’)
onosda’shá ‘sassafras’ (Sassafras albidum) (base *-nöhsta’shr- from *-nöhsta- ‘treasure, value highly’)
onéshawishá ‘humerus’ (base *-nëshawishr- from *-nëshawi- ‘carry the arm’)
o dégë’shá ‘charred remains of a fire’ (base *-atek-shr- from *-atek- ‘burn’ plus the stative aspect suffix *-é(h))

Nominalized forms whose base begins with a or ë may lack an overt pronominal prefix (cf. 7.4.4).

adógwa’shá ‘spoon, ladle’ (base *-atokwa’shr- from *-atoko- ‘scatter’)
ahsönayášá ‘clothes’ (base *-ahsörni- ‘dress’)
adéö’shá ‘friendship’ (base *-atëro- ‘be friends’)
adëño’shá ‘lunch’ (base *-atëno’t- ‘take food with one’)
ëni’shá ‘shelf’ (base unknown)

A derived noun may end with the external locative prefix *-a’keh (> -a’geh).

oté’shá’geh ‘in the flour’ (base *-the’shr- from *-the’t- ‘pound corn’)
ga:yádöshá’geh ‘on paper’ (base *-hyatöhshr- from *-hyatö- ‘write’)
ëni’shá’geh ‘on the shelf’ (base unknown)

Or it may end with the internal locative prefix *-akö:h (> -agö:h).

odëönöshágö:h ‘in the shade’ (base *-atëhönoshshr- from *-atëhöno- ‘be shady’)
hadi’hasdëshágö:h ‘in their power’ (base *-hastehshr- from *-haste- ‘be strong’)
ëni’shágö:gwa:h ‘under the shelf’ (base unknown)
7.6.2. The nominalizing suffix *-t-. This suffix, whose form suggests the causative suffix *-t-, is found in a few unusual combinations. In the following its nominalizing function is clear.

gayáne’dá’ ‘chieftainship’ (base *-yane’t- from *-yane- ‘be a chief’)

Cf., with the more productive nominalizer described in 7.6.1, gayáneshá’ ‘law’ (base *-yanehshr-).

It also appears in the incorporating form of the noun base *-ökwe(t)- ‘person’, as in hōgwé’di:yo:h ‘he’s a good person’. Cf., without this element, hō:gwēh ‘(male) person’. Similar is its use in *-ksa(t)- ‘child’, as in yeksá’di:yo:h ‘she’s a good child’. Cf., without this element, yeksá’a:h ‘little girl’.

7.7. The proper nominalizer *-’.

With a few words a final *-’ is added to form a proper name.

Ohi:yo’ ‘Allegany Reservation’ (cf. ohi:yo:h ‘beautiful river’)

Sganyodaiyo’ (see 4.2.1) ‘Handsome Lake’ (cf. kanyodaiyo:h ‘beautiful lake’)

Shogê’dzo:wa:’ ‘the one with a big forehead’ (a chief’s title) (cf. -kê’ts- ‘forehead’ and -kowa:h ‘augmentative’)

93
8. CLITICS

8.1. Introduction

A Seneca verb or noun may be supplemented with a final clitic. Clitics are distinguished from the extensions of aspect suffixes described in Chapter 6 by the fact that they do not take their own aspect suffixes, but also by their ability to attach more loosely to a variety of words. They are discussed under the following labels.

- augmentative (8.2)
- diminutive (8.3)
- characterizer (8.4)
- populative (8.5)
- decessive (8.6)
- directional (8.7)
- nominal distributive (8.8)
- intensifier (8.9)
- nativizer (8.10)

Sequences of two or more clitics are described in 8.11.

8.2. The augmentative

The augmentative clitic, *-kowa:h (> -go:wa:h) adds a meaning of large size and/or importance. Its meaning is distinct from that of the verb root *-stë- ‘be big’ (physically), and has more in common with the meaning of *-owanë- ‘be big, important’, from which it probably developed as an abbreviated version. Its meaning sometimes focuses primarily on size.

- gá’ga:go:wa:h ‘raven’ (cf. gá’ga: ‘crow’)
- ganyáhdëgo:wa:h ‘large snapping turtle’ (cf. ganyáhdë:h ‘snapping turtle’)
- góhsagígo:wa:h ‘gorilla’ (cf. góhsagíh ‘monkey’)
- hênôdë:ninösgo:wa:h ‘shopping mall’ (cf. hênôdë:ninöś ‘they buy’)

In other uses the augmentative creates a name that is applied to a person or a place that stands out in size, importance, or in some other way.

- Hanôdaga:nyâs:go:wa:h ‘President of the United States’ (cf. hanôdaga:nyâs ‘president’, literally ‘he bites towns’)
- Sganyodâ:dígo:wa:h ‘European’, literally ‘on the other side of the great lake’
  (cf. sganyodâ:díh ‘on the other side of the lake’)
- Gáíwanôösgwâ’go:wa:h ‘Midwinter Ceremony’
  literally ‘great valuable ceremony’
ha’ séhdayano:wé’go:wa:h ‘chief engineer’ (on a train)
(c.f. ga’ séhdayano:we’ ‘train’, literally ‘fast wagon’)
gowáhgo:wa:h ‘king’ (origin uncertain, but related to Mohawk kó:ra ‘governor’)

It appears in the kinship terms:

aksótgo:wa:h ‘great grandmother’ (c.f. akso:t ‘grandmother’)
haksótgo:wa:h ‘great grandfather’ (c.f. hakso:t ‘grandfather’)

8.3. The diminutive

The diminutive clitic, *-’ah or *-ah, adds a meaning of approximation or endearment.

hojánót’ah ‘he’s kind of funny, a clown’ (c.f. hoja:nón ‘he’s amusing, funny)
hajánö’dá’ah ‘clown’ (c.f. hajánö’ta’ ‘he does tricks, clown, acrobat’)

It is found in the names of certain days or months, as well as references to times of day or stages in a life.

Wëda:k’ah ‘Friday’ (c.f. Wë:da:k ‘Saturday’)
Ganâhdo’k’ah ‘October’ (approximately), literally ‘the end of leaves’
Nis’ah ‘February’ (approximately) (etymology unknown)
o’gä:s’ah ‘evening’ (c.f. o’ga:as ‘it gets dark’)
wá’ó:gä:s’ah ‘toward evening’
niênöhö’s’ah ‘little babies’ (c.f. niênöhö’s ‘babies’)
haksá’dase’:ah ‘young man, teenager’ (c.f. hōgwé’dase’: ‘young man’)

The initial glottal stop is missing after h.

yegēhji:hah ‘oldish woman’ (c.f. yegēhji:h ‘old woman’)
onô:kda:nihah ‘sickliness’ (c.f. onô:kda:nih ‘it’s sick’)

8.4. The characterizer

The characterizer clitic is used in naming a people or another entity that is characterized by some prominent feature. With some words its form is *-ka:’ (> -ga:’).

Onôdowá’ga’: ‘Seneca’, literally ‘characterized by a great hill’
Onôyotga’: ‘Oneida’, literally ‘characterized by a standing stone’)
Hâdîshagâné’ga’: ‘Delaware (Indians)’ (etymology uncertain)

With other words the form of the characterizer is *-kha:’ (> -ka:’).

Ôgwé’ôwe:ka’: ‘characteristic of Indians, especially the Seneca language’
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

(cf. Ögwé:ö:weh ‘Indian’)
Ga:nyö:ö:ka: ‘the English language’
gaénogáyöká: ‘characterized by an old song’

In the following word the form of the characterizer is *-kéha:’ (> -gé:a’).
Oyáda’gé:a’ ‘Cherokee’, literally ‘characterized by caves’

8.5. The populative

The populative clitic is used in reference to a group of people, most often the residents of a certain place. Its form is *-hronö’ (> -:onö’).

Ohíyo:onö’ ‘people of the Allegany Reservation’ (Ohi:yo’)
Ta:nöwöde:onö’ ‘people of the Tonawanda Reservation’ (Ta:nöwöde’)
Ganödase:onö’ ‘people of Newtown’ (a section of the Cattaraugus Reservation) (cf. Tganödase: ‘Newtown’)
Gayógwe:onö’ ‘Cayugas’ (etymology uncertain)

Occasionally the reference is to people with some other distinguishing property.

hadí:kxesö:onö’ ‘the ones who throw far to the plate’ (outfielders)
agadö:ni:ho: ‘people of my father’s clan’ (cf. agadö:ni:h ‘my father’s clan’)

8.6. The decessive

The decessive clitic, *-kéha:’ (> -gé:o’) is used most often in references to deceased individuals, usually relatives, ‘the late…’.

aksótgö: ‘my late grandmother’ (cf. akso:t ‘my grandmother’)
shagwá’ni:gö: ‘our late father’ (cf. shagwá’ni:h ‘our father’)
hagébji:gö: ‘our deceased male ancestor’ (cf. hagébji:h ‘old man’)

It may also indicate an object or place that once had some property but has it no longer.

ögwawé:gö: ‘our former possession’ (cf. ögwawé:weh ‘it belongs to us (plural)’)
Ga’dá:gësö: ‘Cattaraugus Reservation’, literally ‘the clay used to stink’ (referring to the banks of Cattaraugus Creek) (cf. ga’dá:gës ‘the clay stinks’)

8.7. The directional

The directional clitic *-kwá:h (> -gwá:h) can be translated ‘toward’ or ‘in the direction of’. The word to which it is attached retains its usual prosodic pattern except for two
modifications: the immediately preceding vowel is always accented, and if the word otherwise ends in a vowel plus h, the h is lost and the vowel is lengthened.

**Ohí:yó’gwa:h** ‘toward the Allegany Reservation’ (cf. **Ohí:yo’** ‘the Allegany Reservation’

tganödayé’gwa:h ‘toward the town’ (cf. tganödayë’ ‘where the town is’)
o:ćdō:gwa:h ‘toward the front, in the future’ (cf. o:ćdō:h ‘in the front’)
gayéösdō:gwa:h ‘toward the right side’ (cf. hayéösdōh ‘his right side’)
söga:dīgwa:h ‘toward the other side’ (cf. söga:dih ‘on the other side’)

The directional clitic is used in compass directions.

tgā:hgwig’é’gwa:h ‘toward the east’ (cf. tgā:hgwigë’s ‘where the sun rises’)
hégā:hgwig’esgwa:h ‘toward the west’ (cf. hégā:hgwigë’s ‘where the sun sets’)
jöne:nō’gwa:h ‘toward the south’ (cf. jöne:nō’ ‘where it is warm’)
ötōwe’gé:gwa:h ‘toward the north’ (cf. ötōwe’geh ‘where it is cold’)

**8.8. The nominal distributive**

The nominal distributive clitic, *-shō’öh* or *-shō*, indicates that there is more than one of something, but also that the included entities are different in some way. It thus has much in common semantically with the distributive derivational suffix, but it is attached to a full word rather than a verb root and the resulting word is a noun.

agāwēshō’öh ‘my (various) belongings’ (cf. aga:wēh ‘it belongs to me’)
oiwagāyōshō’öh ‘the old ways’ (cf. oiwaga:yōh ‘the old way’)
tganödayé’shō’öh ‘where the towns are’ (cf. tganödayë’ ‘where the town is’)
wajishō’öh ‘dark or black things’ (cf. wajich ‘it’s dark, black)
ojānōshō’öh ‘nicknacks’ (cf. oja:nōn ‘it’s funny, amusing’)
yödêyë斯塔’shō’öh ‘the things one reads’ (cf. yödêyësta’ ‘one is reading it’)
ahidijinśhō’öh ‘men’ (cf. hajin:nōh ‘man, male’)
ahidigēhjīshō’öh ‘the old people’ (cf. hadigēhjih ‘they are old’)

The shorter form *-shō* occurs in certain words with lexicalized meanings.

öédōshō’ ‘leaders, head ones’ (cf. o:ćdō:h ‘in the front’)
kenō:ksi’ ‘my relatives’ (cf. kenō:k ‘I’m related to them’)
kéawakshō’ ‘my children’ (cf. ke:awak ‘my daughter’)
hēnōdātśo:shō’ ‘married couples’ (cf. yada:tśō:’ ‘he and his wife, she and her husband’)

97
8.9. The intensifier

The intensifier clitic, *-htsìh (>-hjìh) or with the extended form *-htsiwëh (>-hjiwëh) intensifies in some way the meaning of the word to which it is attached. An immediately preceding h or glottal stop is deleted.

With *-htsìh:

ónëhjìh ‘long ago’ (cf. o:nëh ‘now, then’)  
we:ëhjìh ‘very far’ (cf. we:ëh ‘far’)  
ne’hóhjìh ‘right there’ (cf. ne’hòh ‘there’)

With *-htsiwëh:

o:yàihjì:wëh ‘overripe fruit’ (cf. o:ya:ih ‘ripe fruit’)  
honóhdójì:wëh ‘he knows it very well’ (cf. honóhdó ‘he knows it’)  
agátödëhjì:wëh ‘I’m listening carefully’ (cf. agátö:de’ ‘I hear it’)  
dá:ga:nàhjì:wëh ‘he’s observing it closely’ (cf. dá:ga:ne:’ ‘he’s looking at it’)

8.10. The nativizer

The clitic *-öweh is attached to a noun to characterize something as native, prototypical, or genuine.

ögwé’ö:weh ‘Indian, Native American’ (cf. ö:gwëh ‘person’)  
ahdáhgwa’ö:weh ‘native shoe, moccasin’ (cf. ahdáhgwa’ ‘shoe’)  
oyë’gwa’ö:weh ‘Indian tobacco’ (Nicotiana rustica) (cf. oyë’gwa’ ‘tobacco’)  
onyòhsa’ö:weh ‘Indian squash’ (cf. onyòhsa’ ‘squash’)  
ganó’dua’ö:weh ‘Indian pot, iron kettle’ (cf. ganó’dzu’a ‘pot’)

8.11. Clitic sequences

The following words illustrate the layering of clitic sequences.

ögwé’öwe’shòh’öh ‘Indians’ (nativizer plus nominal distributive)  
ögwé’öwe’ka’ ‘characteristic of Indians, the Seneca language’  
(nativizer plus characterizer)  
sganyodà:diçòwa:ònò ‘Europeans’ (augmentative plus populative)  
hadìgëhjìshò’ögë:ö ‘deceased ancestors’ (nominal distributive plus decessive)  
hanìshë’nò’gë:gwa:h ‘toward hell’ (populative plus external locative plus directional)  
o’gà:i’sànë:gwa:h ‘toward evening’ (diminutive plus external locative plus directional)
9. KINSHIP TERMS

9.1. Introduction

The traditional way of referring to relatives in the Seneca language followed a classification system quite different from that with which English speakers are familiar. At the present time, however, with everyone speaking English most of the time, the English kinship system is more familiar and is replacing the traditional one.

As an example, in the traditional Seneca system ha’nih included not only one’s biological father but also all his male relatives of the same generation as him. Similarly, no’yëh included not only one’s biological mother but also all her female relatives of the same generation as her. Age:hak included one’s father’s female relatives of the same generation as him, while haknó’sëh included one’s mother’s male relatives of the same generation as her. Nowadays, however, ha’nih and no’yëh are often used only for one’s immediate father and mother, while age:hak and haknó’sëh are used in the same way as ‘aunt’ and ‘uncle’ in English (including either father’s or mother’s relatives). Other differences are mentioned below.

With regard to their form, kinship terms bear resemblances to both verb and noun morphology but are different enough to require the separate descriptions in this chapter. Their pronominal prefixes sometimes differ from what one would otherwise expect. Most of these terms are analyzed here on the basis of a verb stem that includes a verb base plus an aspect suffix. (See also Chafe 1963: 19-26.) The relation of the pronominal prefixes to these stems is discussed for Oneida in Koenig and Michelson (1910).

Kinship terms are organized here under the following general headings.

- Relatives in general (9.2)
- Relatives of the same generation (9.3)
- Relatives one generation apart (9.4)
- Relatives two generations apart (9.5)
- Relatives three generations apart (9.6)
- Relatives by marriage (9.7)
- Step-parents and step-children (9.8)
- Relatives by adoption (9.9)
- Ritual friendship (9.10)
- Casual friendship (9.11)


9.2. Relatives in general

The verb stem *-nök means ‘be related to’.

niyo:nö:k ‘what the relationship is’ (*niyonök)
henö:k ‘my male relative’, literally ‘I’m related to him’ (*henök)

7 See the classic description of the Seneca system in Morgan 1997 [1870], especially pp. 167-169.
ke:nö:k ‘my female relative’, literally ‘I'm related to her or them’ (*khenök)
hesnö:k ‘your male relative’, literally ‘you're related to him’ (*hehsnök)
shenö:k ‘your female relative’, literally ‘you're related to her or them’ (*shenök)

If the reference is to more than one relative, that fact is signaled by the addition of the nominal distributive suffix -shö.

kenö:kshö ‘my relatives’ (*khenökshö)
shenö:kshö ‘your relatives’ (*shenökshö)

A reciprocal relationship is indicated with the addition of the reflexive prefix -atë-, creating the stem -atënök ‘be related to each other’, but without the duplicative prefix that is otherwise present in reciprocals (5.3.3). The nominal distributive suffix -shö indicates the presence of more than one person in the other half of the reciprocal relationship.

dwadënök ‘we (in pl) are related to each other (sg)’ (*twadënök)
agwadënök ‘we (ex pl) are related to each other (sg)’ (*yakwadënök)
dwadenökshö ‘we (in pl) are related to each other (pl)’ (*twadënökshö)
agwadenökshö ‘we (ex pl) are related to each other (pl)’ (*yakwadënökshö)

A nominalized form appears as *-nökshr- in ganö:kshö ‘relationship’ (*kanökshhra’).

The noun root *-hwatsir- refers to a family.

gawaji:yä ‘family’ (*kahwatsira’)
kwaji:yä ‘my family’ (*khwatsira’)
sawaji:yä ‘your family’ (*sahwatsira’)
yewaji:yä ‘her family’ (*yehwatsira’)
hawaji:yä ‘his family’ (*hahwatsira’)
gawaji:yä:de ‘the family is present’ (*kahwatsirate’)
yewaji:yä:yë ‘she has a family’ (*yehwatsirayë’)
wa:yätwa:jiyö:ni ‘the two of them made a family’ (*wahyathwatsiröni’)
wa:yätwa:jiyowawänén ‘the two of them made a big family’ (*wahyathwatsirowanëht)

Related words are

shodínöhsa:t, literally ‘they are of one house’ (*shotinöhsat)
nö’degané:es, literally ‘how long a lineage’ (*na’tekanëhres)

9.3. Relatives of the same generation

9.3.1. Twins. The verb stem *-khëh with the duplicative prefix means ‘be twins’.

denikëh or deikëh ‘they two (masculine or mixed gender) are twins’ (*tehnikëh)
deknikëh or degikëh ‘they two (femine) are twins’ (*teknikëh)

9.3.2. Siblings. Traditionally siblings were relatives of the same generation whose parents were related, provided those parents were of the same sex. These terms were also
used for members of the same moiety. The verb stem *-atëhnatre:* with the duplicative prefix means ‘be siblings’.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{deyagadé:nö:dë:} & \quad \text{‘we (ex du) are siblings’} & (*tewatëhnatre:*) \\
\text{deyagwadé:nö:dë:} & \quad \text{‘we (ex pl) are siblings’} & (*tewatëhnatre:*) \\
\text{desnyadé:nö:dë:} & \quad \text{‘you (du) are siblings’} & (*tesnyatëhnatre:*) \\
\text{deswadé:nö:dë:} & \quad \text{‘you (pl) are siblings’} & (*teswatëhnatre:*) \\
\text{deyadé:nö:dë:} & \quad \text{‘they (masculine du) are siblings’} & (*tehyatëhnatre:*) \\
\text{dë:nö:dë:} & \quad \text{‘they (masculine pl) are siblings’} & (*tehënatëhnatre:*) \\
\text{degyadé:nö:dë:} & \quad \text{‘they (feminine du) are sisters’} & (*teknyatëhnatre:*) \\
\text{dewëndë:nö:dë:} & \quad \text{‘they (feminine pl) are sisters’} & (*tewënatëhnatre:*) \\
\text{sëh nö:de} & \quad \text{‘three sisters’} & (*na’tewënatëhnatre:*) \\
\end{align*}
\]

This same base followed by the distributive suffix *-ö- and the nominal distributive suffix *-shö* is used to refer to members of the same moiety.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{agyadé:nöjø:shö} & \quad \text{‘we (ex du) belong to the same moiety’} & (*yakatëhnatrö’shö*) \\
\text{agwadé:nöjø:shö} & \quad \text{‘we (ex pl) belong to the same moiety’} & (*yakwatëhnatrö’shö*) \\
\text{honö:dé:nöjø:shö} & \quad \text{‘they (masculine) belong to the same moiety’} & (*honatëhnatrö’shö*) \\
\text{onö:dé:nöjø:shö} & \quad \text{‘they (feminine) belong to the same moiety’} & (*yonatëhnatrö’shö*) \\
\end{align*}
\]

The verb stem *-tsi* (> *-ji*) occurs with an irregular set of pronominal prefixes to indicate an older sibling.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{hahjì} & \quad \text{‘my older brother’} & (*hahtsì’*) \\
\text{ahjì} & \quad \text{‘my older sister’} & (*ahtsì’*) \\
\text{shëwahjì} & \quad \text{‘our (in pl) older brother’ (also refers to the sun)} & (*shëtwahtsì’*) \\
\text{shëgawhjì} & \quad \text{‘our (ex pl) older brother’} & (*shëkahtsì’*) \\
\end{align*}
\]

The verb stem *-kë:* (> *-gë:* ) occurs with regular pronominal prefixes to indicate a younger sibling, literally translatable as ‘have as one’s younger sibling’.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{he’gë:} & \quad \text{‘my younger brother’} & (*he’kë:’) \\
\text{ke’gë:} & \quad \text{‘my younger sister’} & (*khe’kë:’) \\
\end{align*}
\]

Several younger siblings are indicated with the addition of the nominal distributive *-shö’oh*.

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{he’gë:shö’oh} & \quad \text{‘my younger brothers’} & (*he’kë:shö’oh) \\
\text{ke’gë:shö’oh} & \quad \text{‘my younger sisters’} & (*khe’kë:shö’oh) \\
\end{align*}
\]

Reciprocal sibling relationships are referred to with this stem and the addition of the middle voice prefix, *-ate’kë:* (> *-ade’gë:*).

\[
\begin{align*}
\text{yadé’gë:} & \quad \text{‘he and his brother or sister, she and her brother’} & (*hyate’kë:’) \\
\text{gyadé’gë:} & \quad \text{‘she and her sister’} & (*kyate’kë:’) \\
\text{agyàdégë:} & \quad \text{‘we (ex du) are siblings’} & (*yakate’kë:’) \\
\text{agwàdégë:} & \quad \text{‘we (ex pl) are siblings’} & (*yakwaté’kë:’) \\
\text{hëndé’gë:} & \quad \text{‘they (masculine pl) are siblings’} & (*hënaté’kë:’) \\
\text{snyadé’gë:} & \quad \text{‘your brother’, literally ‘you (du) are siblings’} & (*snyate’kë:’) \\
\end{align*}
\]
With the reflexive replacing the middle voice prefix, the stem \*-atate'kë:' is used to refer to the younger members of the relationship, ‘be to each other as older to younger siblings’.

snyadáde'gë:' ‘your (du) younger brothers’
swadáde'gë:' ‘your (pl) younger brothers’
dwadáde'gë:' ‘our (ex pl) younger brothers’
(also used to refer to white men)

9.3.3. Cousins. Traditionally cousins were relatives of the same generation whose parents were related, provided those parents were not of the same sex. These terms were also used for members of the opposite moiety. The verb stem \*-ara'se:' means ‘be cousins’.

agy:’se: ‘we (ex du) are cousins’
agw:’se: ‘we (ex pl) are cousins’
y:’se: ‘they (masc du) are cousins’
hënê:’se: ‘they (masc pl) are cousins’
hënê:’se:’gê:gwa:h ‘toward the opposite moiety’

This base is nominalized with \*-hshr- followed by the verb root \*-ë- to refer specifically to membership in the opposite moiety. The resulting stem \*-ara'sehshë’ takes patient pronominal prefixes.

ôâ’seshë’ ‘membership in opposite moieties’
ôgyâ:’seshë’ ‘we (du) belong to opposite moieties’
ôgwâ:’seshë’ ‘we (pl) belong to opposite moieties’
honê:’seshë’ ‘they (masculine) belong to opposite moieties’
onê:’seshë’ ‘they (feminine) belong to opposite moieties’

9.4. Relatives one generation apart

9.4.1. Parents and children. Traditionally parents and children were relatives one generation apart where the older member was either a biological parent of the younger or was related to, the same generation as, and the same sex as a biological parent.

The noun base \*-ksa’t- ‘child’ appears in words like the following, where possession is marked as alienable with patient pronominal prefixes:

gaksá’da ‘child, baby’
agéksa’da ‘my child’
goksá’da ‘her child’
hoksá’da ‘his child’
hodiksa’da ‘their child’

Note also

goksá’dayë’ ‘she has a child’
hoksá’dayë’ ‘he has a child’
nisáksa’da:yë’ ‘how many children you have’

Offspring are referred to collectively with the noun root \*-wir-.

103
The same root may be incorporated with the verb root *-ase- ‘be new’ to refer to a newborn child.

gowi:ya:se: ‘her newborn child’
ho:di:ya:se: ‘their newborn child’
gowi:ya:se: ‘a newborn child’
agwi:ya:ge:de ‘I have many children’

9.4.2. Sons and daughters. The verb stem *-hawahk ‘have as son or daughter’ appears in words like the following:

he:awak ‘my son’
ke:awak ‘my daughter’
ké:awaksh ‘my sons and daughters’
ho:awak ‘his son’
go:awak ‘her daughter’
shagó:awak ‘his daughter’
hôwô:wôk ‘her or their son’
shagó:di:awak ‘their daughter’
hês:hawak ‘your son’
she:awak ‘your daughter or your children’
gö:öwök ‘my son or daughter’ (speaking to him or her)
hôwô:di:awaksh ‘their children’
hês:hôwô:di:awaksh ‘their children’s children’

The verb stem *-hawahk may occur with the reflexive prefix *-atat- to mean ‘be parent and child to each other’.

yadátawak ‘he and his son or daughter, she and her son’
gyadátawak ‘she and her daughter’

9.4.3. Mother. The speaker’s mother is called no’yëh.

The verb stem *-no’ëh ‘have as mother’ (without the y) appears in

ôgwáno’ëh ‘our (ex) mother’
etíno’ëh ‘our (in) mother’
ákíno’ëh ‘our mother or mothers’
sanó’ëh ‘your mother’
swanó’ëh ‘your (pl) mother’
onó’ëh ‘her mother’
honó’ëh ‘his mother’
shakotinó’ëh ‘their mother’
onó’ëgëhë ‘the late mother’

9.4.4. Father. The speaker’s father is called ha’ni. 
The verb stem -a’nih ‘have as father’ appears in

gwa’nih ‘our father’ (addressed to him)  (*kwa’nih)
shagwá’nih ‘our father’ (referring to him)  (*shakwa’nih)
ya’nih ‘your father’  (*hya’nih)
ho’nih ‘his or her father’  (*ho’nih)
hodi’nih ‘their (masc or mixed) father’  (*hoti’nih)
höwö’nih ‘their (fem) father’  (*höwa’nih)
shagwá’nimëhö:  ‘our deceased father’  (*shakwa’nikëha:’)

9.4.5. Aunts and uncles. Traditionally aunts and uncles were related to, the same generation as, and a different sex from a biological parent.

The verb stem *-nhahk means ‘be aunt to’.

age:hak ‘my aunt’  (*wakenhahk)
ho:hak ‘his aunt’  (*honhahk)
o:hak ‘her aunt’  (*yonhahk)
ya:hak ‘your aunt’ (said to a man)  (*hyanhahk)
esa:hak ‘your aunt’ (said to a woman)  (*yesanhahk)

The verb stem *-no’sëh means ‘be uncle to’.

haknó’sëh ‘my uncle’  (*hakno’sëh)
honó’sëh ‘his uncle’  (*hono’sëh)
shakóno’sëh ‘her uncle’  (*shakono’sëh)
yanó’sëh ‘your uncle’  (*hyano’sëh)
et no’sëh ‘our (in) uncles’  (*yethino’sëh)

9.4.6. Nieces and nephews. Traditionally nieces and nephews were related through a man’s sister or a woman’s brother.

The verb stem *-hs’neh means ‘have as nephew or niece’ with a woman speaking.

hehsó’neh ‘my nephew (woman speaking)’  (*hehsó’neh)
kehsó’neh ‘my niece (woman speaking)’  (*kehsó’neh)
hehsëhsó’neh ‘your nephew (woman speaking)’  (*hehsëhsó’neh)
shehsó’neh ‘your niece or nieces (woman speaking)’  (*shehsó’neh)

The verb stem *-ëhwatë’ means ‘have as nephew or niece’ with a man speaking.

heyë:wö:dë’ ‘my nephew (man speaking)’  (*heyëhwatë’)
keyë:wö:dë’ ‘my niece (man speaking)’  (*keyëhwatë’)
hehsë:wö:dë’ ‘your nephew (man speaking)’  (*hehsëhwatë’)
höwöyë:wö:dë’ ‘her or their nephew (man speaking)’  (*höwayëhwatë’)

A reciprocal relation is expressed with the addition of the reflexive prefix *-atat-.

yadádë:wö:dë’ ‘they (du) are uncle and nephew to each other’  (*yatatëhwatë’)

105
9.5. Grandparents and grandchildren

The verb stem *-atre’ means ‘have as grandchild’.

- heyade’ ‘my grandson’
- keya:de’ ‘my granddaughter’
- keyáde’shö’ ‘my grandchildren’
- haga:de’ ‘my grandfather’
- yade’ ‘your grandson’
- esa:de’ ‘your granddaughter’
- ho:de’ ‘his or her grandson’
- shago:de’ ‘his granddaughter’

A reciprocal relation is expressed with the addition of the reflexive prefix *-atat-.

- yadadade’ ‘he and his grandson or granddaughter, she and her grandson’
- gyadadade’ ‘she and her granddaughter’

A nominalized base *-atre’shr- appears in

- agáde’shā’ ‘my grandchildren’
- sadé’shā’ ‘your grandchildren’
- hodé’shā’ ‘his grandchildren’
- godé’shā’ ‘her grandchildren’
- honóde’shā’ ‘their grandchildren’

The nominalized base is incorporated with the verb stem *-ka’te’ ‘be many’ in

- agáde’shāga:de’ ‘I have many grandchildren’
- godé’shāga:de’ ‘she has many grandchildren’
- hodé’shāga:de’ ‘he has many grandchildren’

A verb stem *-hsot with partially irregular pronominal prefixes means ‘be grandparent to’.

- hakso:t ‘my grandfather’
- akso:t ‘my grandmother’
- shedwáhso:t ‘our (in) grandfather’
- etíhsot ‘our (in) grandmother or grandparents’
  (also refers to the moon)
- yahso:t ‘your grandfather’
- esáhsot ‘your grandmother’
- hohso:t ‘his or her grandfather’

The following are used to refer to deceased grandparents.

- haksótgë:ö’ ‘my late grandfather’
- aksótgë:ö’ ‘my late grandmother’

A nominalized base *-hsohshr- appears in
swahsóshayë’ ‘you (pl) have a grandparent or grandparents’

hodihsoshayë’ ‘they (pl) have a grandparent or grandparents’

hodihsoshá’shó’oh ‘their grandparents’

ógwáhsoshá’shó’ögë:ó’ ‘our late grandparents’

9.6. Great-grandparents and great-grandchildren

These relations are expressed with the addition of the augmentative clitic *-kowa:h.

keyáde’go:wa:h ‘my great-granddaughter’

heyáde’go:wa:h ‘my great-grandson’

aksótgo:wa:h ‘my great-grandmother’

haksótgo:wa:h ‘my great-grandfather’

9.7. Relatives by marriage

The verb root *-nyak- means ‘get married’.

wa:onya:k ‘he got married’

wa’aqonya:k ‘she got married’

waödinya:k ‘they got married’

sa:onya:k ‘he got married again’

agenyagöh ‘I’m married’

de’swagenya:göh ‘I’m not married anymore’

honyágö:no’h ‘he used to be married’

ëyöninyya:k ‘we (ex du) will get married’

á:yöki:nyak ‘we (du) might get married’

A colloquial way of expressing the idea of getting married is with the verb base *

Other related words include

o’tsádá’negë: ‘they (du) got together’

dé:yádá’negë: ‘they (du) will get together’

dósádá’negë: ‘he got together again’

da’dé:yádá’negë:h ‘they (du) aren’t together’

deyódá’négëhse ‘she is about to marry’

deyódá’négëhse’s ‘she goes and gets married’

Other related words include

o’téndáhnngóénhöet ‘they took a liking to each other’

éödi:wa:nıyádë ‘they’ll make it official’, literally ‘they’ll confirm the matter’

9.7.1. Spouse. The following words are used for a spouse, evidently derived from a verb stem *-hro:’.

yo:’ ‘spouse’
nê:yo:’ ‘his wife’ or ‘her husband’
yo’gé:ò’ ‘his late wife’ or ‘her late husband’
nê:yo’gé:ò’ ‘his ex-wife’ or ‘her ex-husband’

The reciprocal relation of husband and wife is expressed with the addition of the reflexive prefix in the verb stem *-atathro:’.

dzada:tšo: ‘he and his wife, she and her husband’ (*hyatathro:’)
šada:tšo: ‘you and your wife’ (*syatathro:’)
hënôdatšo:shó’ ‘they are married couples’ (*hënatathroshó’)

A noun root that refers either to a married couple or to one member of such a couple is *-nöhkw-.

ganôhgwa’ ‘married couple’ (*kanôhkwa’)
hônôhgwa’ ‘his wife’ (*konôhkwa’)
gonôhgwa’ ‘her husband’ (*konôhkwa’)

Other related words include

deyágyatgô’sáhgwa’ ‘we (ex du) share our pillow’ (*teyakyatkô’šrahkwa’)
deyágyatgôédáhgwa’ ‘we (ex du) rest our heads together’ (*teyakyatkôhètahkwa’)
do:nôdádásdéisdôh ‘they are managing each other’ (*tehonatatasterihstôh)

9.7.2. Siblings-in-law. Siblings-in-law of the same sex are referred to with the verb stem *-atyoh.

agya:joh ‘my brother-in-law’ (said by a man), ‘my sister-in-law’ (said by a woman) (*akyatyoh)

A man may refer to his sister-in-law with either of the following.

agâ’nî:ye’ ‘my sister-in-law’ (*akra’nire’)
agya:nỳëh ‘my sister-in-law’ (*akyanyëh)

The following words appear to have been intended by Morgan (1870: 169) but are no longer recognized (Chafe 1963: 25).

keyéö’ ‘my sister-in-law’ (said by a man) (*kheyëha’)
heyéö’ ‘my brother-in-law’ (said by a woman) (*heyëha’)

9.7.3. Parents-in-law. The relation between a parent-in-law and a daughter-in-law is expressed with the verb stem* -sa’.

ke:sa’ ‘my daughter-in-law’ (*khesa’)
she:sa’ ‘your daughter-in-law’ (*shesa’)
hage:sa’ ‘my father-in-law’ (said by a woman) (*hakesa’)
ôgé:sa’ ‘my mother-in-law’ (said by a woman) (*yôkesa’)
go:sa’ ‘her daughter-in-law’ (*kosa’)

108
The relation between a parent-in-law and a son-in-law is expressed with the verb stem *-enhös.

- **aknehös**: ‘my son-in-law’, ‘my father-in-law or mother-in-law’ (said by a man), (*yaknenhös:s)
- **agwehös**: ‘our son-in-law’, ‘my parents-in-law’ (said by a man) (*yakwenhös)

In a few other words the verb stem is instead *-nenhös.

- **shaknínahös**: ‘our (ex du) son-in-law’ (*shakninenhös)
- **yadánahös**: ‘he or she and his or her son-in-law’ (*hyatatnenhös)

Parents-in-law of the same couple are referred to with

- **agwadéno:ö**: ‘we are co-parents-in-law’ (*yakwaténorö’)

Literally ‘we are dear to each other’

### 9.8. Step-parents and step-children

The verb stem *-no:* means ‘have as stepchild’.

- **he:no:** ‘my stepson’ (*heno:’)
- **kek:no:** ‘my stepdaughter’ (*khenö:’)
- **hakno:** ‘my stepfather’ (*hakno:’)
- **höwö:no:** ‘her stepson or their stepson’ (*höwano:’)

The verb stem *-nö’ihs means ‘be stepparent to’.

- **haknö’ihs**: ‘my stepfather’ (*haknö’ihs)
- **aknö’ihs**: ‘my stepmother’ (*waknö’ihs)
- **honö’ihs**: ‘his stepfather or stepmother’, ‘her stepfather’ (*honö’ihs)
- **yonö’ihs**: ‘her stepmother’ (*yonö’ihs)

### 9.9. Relatives by adoption

The verb base *-ksa’taröko-* means ‘adopt a child’, *literally* ‘acquire a child’.

- **agéksa’dëogwëh**: ‘I’ve adopted a child’ (*wakeksa’tarökwëh)
- **höwóksa’dëogwëh**: ‘she or they have adopted him’ (*höwaksa’tarökwëh)
- **o’géksa’dëogo**: ‘I adopted a child’ (*wa’keksa’taröko’)

The verb base *-ökwetaröko-* means ‘adopt a person’:

- **o’gögwe’dëogo**: ‘I adopted someone’ (*wa’kökwe’taröko’)

The verb base *-asterihst-* ‘take charge of’ is also used for such a relationship:

- **heyasdéísdöh**: ‘I’ve adopted him’, *literally* ‘I’ve taken charge of him’
- **é:yasde:is**: ‘I’ll adopt him’ (*éheyasterihs)
9.10. Ritual friendship

The Senecas have had a practice of creating a fictional relationship between two otherwise unrelated individuals, who are spoken of in English as ‘friends’. The verb stem meaning ‘be friends’ in that sense is *-atshih.*

ögyatših ‘we (du) are friends’ (*yökyatshih)
ōgwatših ‘we (pl) are friends’ (*yökwatshih)
honō:tših ‘they (pl) are friends’ (*honatshih)
It is shortened to tših in expressions like hae’ tših! ‘hi, friend!’

9.11. Casual friendship

A less formalized friendship relation is expressed with the verb base *-atëro-.*

ögyade:o’ ‘we (du) are friends’ (*yökyatëro’)
ōgwade:o’ ‘we (pl) are friends’ (*yökwatëro’)
ōgwádéó’shö’ ‘we all are friends’ (*yökyatëro’shö’)
honōde:o’ ‘they are friends’ (*honatëro’)
gyade:oh ‘friend!’ (*kyatëroh)

Causative and inchoative suffixes are added in:

waonödëostë’t ‘they became friends’ (*wa’honatëro’sthe’t)

A nominalized base occurs in:

adëö’shâ’ ‘friendship’ (*atëro’shra’)

A Grammar of the Seneca Language
10. SYNTAX PART 1
AMPLIFYING A PRONOMINAL MEANING

10.1. Introduction

A description of Seneca syntax must take into account the fact that the polysynthetic verb morphology of this language includes within a single word a number of elements which, in many other languages, would appear as separate words within a clause. The traditional view of syntax as describing constructions inside and outside the clause is difficult to apply in this language because so much of what would elsewhere be inside a clause is included here inside a word. Chapters 10-12 are organized on a different basis, describing ways in which elements inside a word, or sometimes an entire word, are amplified by elements outside the word.

As described in Chapters 3-7, Seneca verbs convey various kinds of information concerning an event or state: its participants, its aspectual properties, its relation to perceived reality, its location in space or time, whether it is a cause or instrument, whether it is distributed across entities or across time, whether it benefits someone or harms them, whether it involves going somewhere to perform an action or being performed while walking, whether it happens easily, or whether it is the culmination of a series of other events. Such information is closely packed within the verb, where each element has its own form and position determined by the morphological patterns that have been described.

The present chapter looks at ways of amplifying the meanings of pronominal prefixes in order to convey more information about the participant(s) in an event or state. Chapter 11 describes ways of amplifying the meanings of prepronominal prefixes and aspect suffixes by adding more information concerning space, time, and epistemology. Chapter 12 discusses ways of amplifying the meaning of an entire verb by adding a subordinate verb.

This chapter focuses on independent first and second person pronouns (10.2), the pronoun-like behavior of the noun root *-öhw- (10.3), indefinite pronouns (10.4), demonstrative pronouns (10.5), and uses of the particle neh (10.6).

10.2. First and second person pronouns

Basic properties of the participants in an event or state—their person, number, inclusivity, and participant roles as agents, patients, or beneficiaries—are obligatorily included within almost every verb. Sometimes, however, reference to a participant is amplified with the addition of a separate first or second person pronoun that gives more prominence to a referent than the verb-internal prefixes alone. These separate pronouns distinguish first and second person only, not number, inclusivity, or participant role. Besides adding prominence to a referent, they may contrast one referent with another, either expressed or implied.

10.2.1. The first person independent pronoun i:’. Whereas the verb-internal first person prefixes distinguish number (singular, dual, plural), inclusivity (inclusive, exclusive), and role (agent, patient, beneficiary), there is only one verb-external first person pronoun, i:’, which can be translated ‘I’, ‘me’, ‘we’, or ‘us’ as the context demands.
I’ nä:h koh hi:ğë:h ne’hoh niwagaje:ëh.
I emphasis and that there I’m doing it
And I was the one doing that there.

Önëhji: në:h i’ tśigö:he’.
long time this I I’m alive
I’ve been living a long time.

Ha’degagö:n i’ ha’de:yë:h o’gi’.
it’s necessary I many things I said
I had a lot of things to say.

Wa’ôknôsga:i’ nä:h i’.
she caused me trouble emphasis me
She got after me.

I’ ne’: agwádakenöje’s,
we it is we (in pl) are running around
We were running around,

I’ koh wa’ôki:owi’,
us and they told us (pl)
And they told us,

Ogwenyö:h dëyôgwadádesnye:’ i’.
it’s possible we (pl) will take care of ourselves we
We can take care of ourselves.

10.2.1.1. First person plus neh in ni’.
Often i’ is preceded by the particle neh (see 10.6
below) in the contracted form ni’, whose meaning can be approximated with the English
expression ‘as for me (or us)’.

Gatga:’ ni’ gë:s ögegë:dë’,
sometimes I repeatedly I’m tired of it
As for me, sometimes I get tired of it,

Nä:h ni’ i:wí:h da’áwaknîgohëh.
emphasis I I think I don’t forget it
As for me, I don’t think I forget it.

Da:h ni’ o:nëh në:ğë:h, gegëhjih ni’,
so me now this I’m old me
So as for me now, I’m old,

da:h hë’eh nä:h koh ni’ da’gwîs’dë’.
so not emphasis and me nothing
so for me there’s nothing.

Ne’ ni’ gë:s neh, dödayagwagawe’ gë:s.
it is us repeatedly namely we (ex pl) rowed back repeatedly
As for us, we always rowed back.

A Grammar of the Seneca Language
Ni:' is often found in quotations.

Ne:' ni’ knö:wö:s o’gi’.

Ne:' ni’ knö:wö:s o’gi’.

it is I I’m hungry for it I said

‘I’m hungry for it,’ I said.

Wa:etgë’ ni’ gënhöhdönyöh o’gi’.

Wa:etgë’ ni’ gënhöhdönyöh o’gi’.

it’s bad I I think I said

‘I think bad things,’ I said.

Ni’: nä:h koh wa’a:ğë’.

Ni’: nä:h koh wa’a:ğë’.

me emphasis and she said

‘And it was me,’ she said.

O:nëh ni’: ęgáhdë:di’ wa’a:ğë’.

O:nëh ni’: ęgáhdë:di’ wa’a:ğë’.

now I I will go she said

‘Now I will go,’ she said.

Ne:' neh ökë:owi’, hë’eh nä:h gyö’öh ni’,

Ne:' neh ökë:owi’, hë’eh nä:h gyö’öh ni’,

it is namely they told us not emphasis reported we

They told us, ‘Not for us,

asdeh ta:yagwë’se:k. outside we shouldn’t be around

we shouldn’t be around outside.’

10.2.1.2. First person plus -ah in i’:ah. First person i’: may be followed by the diminutive suffix -ah in the word i’:ah, perhaps expressing humility on the part of the speaker.

Ne’hoh gë:s hegënyohşodaje’s nä:h i’:ah.

Ne’hoh gë:s hegënyohşodaje’s nä:h i’:ah.

there repeatedly I’m sitting around there emphasis me

I was sitting around there.

I’: kdake’s nä:h i’:ah.

I’: kdake’s nä:h i’:ah.

I’m running around emphasis me

I was running around.

Degadogë’öh neh i’:ah.

Degadogë’öh neh i’:ah.

it’s hard for me namely me

It’s hard for me.

10.2.1.3. First person plus neh and -ah in ni’:ah. First person i’: may combine with both neh and -ah in the contracted form ni’:ah.

Tśigëksa’å:h ni’:ah.

Tśigëksa’å:h ni’:ah.

when I was a child me

As for me, when I was a little boy.
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

O’dwagajenö:s ni:’ah.
I was hallucinating me
As for me, I was seeing things.

Ne:’ ni:’ neh gë’nigöégawetak ni:’ah.
assertion me namely I used to assert myself me
As for me, I used to assert myself.

Gägwë’di:yoh ne’ho’ni:’ah ni:’ah gyö’öh waë’.
I’m a good person there emphasis me reported he said
As for me, I’m a good person he said.

Geshá:nis ni:’ah.
I’m afraid me
As for me, I’m afraid.

10.2.2. The second person independent pronoun i:s. Whereas the verb-internal second person pronominal prefixes may distinguish number (singular, dual, plural) and (when they are singular but not when they are dual or plural) their role (agent, patient, beneficiary), there is only one verb-external second person pronoun, i:s ‘you’.

I:s á:hö’öh.
you the most
You’re the best.

I:s né:wa’ ne’ho’ho’se:t.
you this time there you go there
It’s your turn to go there.

Sniyá’dë:je’ i:s neh dzada:tšo:’.y
you (du) are there you namely you and your wife
Were you there with your wife?

10.2.2.1. Second person plus neh in ni:s. Like i:’, i:s may be preceded by the particle neh in the contracted form ni:s ‘as for you’.

Sö:h nis?
who? you
As for you, who are you?

Dë’ëh nis ša:söh?
what? you are called
As for you, what’s your name?

Ne’ho’ni:s nëyö’dë:ök jotgö:n.
that you it will be so always
As for you, it will always be that way for you.

10.2.2.2. Second person plus diminutive -’ah in i:s’ah. Second person i:s may be followed by the diminutive suffix -’ah in the combination i:s’ah, perhaps expressing affection toward the listener.
116

English translation:

**10.2.2.3. Second person plus neh and -'ah in ni:s'ah.** Second person i:' may combine with both neh and -'ah in the contracted form ni:s'ah.

**Ne'ho' wah nèh niyö'dèh ni:s'ah deswadagwáhse:h.**

that indeed this how it is you you have lost somebody

As for you who have lost somebody, that's the way it is.

**10.3. The noun root *-öhw- 'self'.** This noun root is the basis for words that function as emphatic pronouns, distinguishing person, gender, and (in the third person) number, as set forth in Table 10.1. Each form is shown in pairs. The form on the right, in which the hw sequence has been reduced to h, is the one more often heard today, while the hw form was used more often by speakers of an earlier generation.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Singular</th>
<th>Nonsingular</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1st person</td>
<td>agö:hwö' or agö:hö'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'I myself'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd person</td>
<td>söhwö' or söhö'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'you yourself'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Masculine</td>
<td>háöhwö' or ha:hö'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>honö:hwö' or honö:hö'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'he himself'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Feminine</td>
<td>gáöhwö' or ga:hö'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>onö:hwö' or onö:hö'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'she herself'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Neuter</td>
<td>áöhwö' or a:hö'</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>'it itself'</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 10.1. Inflections of the noun root *-öhw- 'self'

Examples:

**I:' gë:s o'jõgesye:',**

me repeatedly she took care of me

_She always took care of me,_

**da:h o:nèh wa:eh gáöhwö' wa'ödekö:ni'.**

so then first she herself she ate

_before she herself ate._

**Ga:hö' nà:h gë:s wa'egä:go'.**

she herself emphasis repeatedly she received payment

_She herself always did get paid._

**Ne:' neh háöhwö' ne'ho' niöye:ëh.**

it is namely he himself that what he has done

_That is what he himself has done._
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

Ha:hō’ wa:yēde:i’. he himself he learned
He’s the one who learned.

Ne:’ neh áöhwó’ shō:h jonóhdös’ōh. it is namely itself just it has happened spontaneously
It happened all by itself.

Ne:’ a:hō’ shō:h ëwödöni:ak. it is itself just it will keep growing
It will just keep growing by itself.

Ne:’ koh neh honō:hwō’ it is and namely they themselves
And they themselves
dē:yádahnóohgwawak. they (m.du.agt) will keep loving each other
will keep loving each other.

Honō:hō’ nā:h gáwayédahgōh. they themselves emphasis it’s a responsibility
It’s a responsibility for themselves.

10.3.1. The stem *-öhwak’ehah ‘oneself alone’. The words described above are
sometimes extended with the addition of *-’kehah, which apparently consists of the
external locative suffix *-’keh followed by the diminutive *-ah. The resulting meaning is
‘oneself alone’ or ‘by oneself’. The following examples are all from the Creation
story that was dictated to J.N.B. Hewitt by John Armstrong in 1896, suggesting that it was
more common at that time.

Sōhō’geah né:wa’ éhsékdō:nō:’ neh ökní’e:odō’. by yourself this time you will check them namely our (du) traps
This time you by yourself will check the traps we set.

I:’ shō:h gē:s agóhö’géah o’gádekō:ní’ wa’a:gē’. I just repeatedly by myself I eat she said
I always eat by myself she said.

Da:h o:nēh háöhō’géah shō:h hodékö:ní:h neh hagēhjih. so then by himself just he is eating namely old man
So then the old man was eating all by himself.

10.4. Indefinite pronouns. The following third person pronouns have an indefinite
reference.

sō:ga:’ ‘someone, anyone’ (10.4.1)
de’sō:ga:’ ‘no one’ (10.4.1.1)
ha’gwisdē’ or gwisdē’ ‘something’ (10.4.2)
da’ágwisdë’ or da’gwisdë’ ‘nothing’ (10.4.2.1)
na’áhdë’ëh ‘things’ (10.4.3)
gye:h ‘some’ (10.4.4)

10.4.1. sö:ga:’ ‘someone, anyone’

Éké:owi’ sö:ga:’.
I’ll tell them someone
I’ll tell someone.

Jö:g wah sö:ga:’ ho:wisdayë’.
if someone he has money
If someone has money.

Da’áoh sö:ga:’ aösayanótgé:ni’.
it’s impossible someone they might beat you
It’s impossible for anyone to beat you.

10.4.1.1. de’sö:ga:’ ‘no one’

De’sö:ga:’ dé:nö:oka’ ögwé’öwe:ka:’.
no one they don’t understand it the Indian language
No one understands Indian.

10.4.2. ha’gwisdë’ or gwisdë’ ‘something’

Ojíke’dæ:e’ ha’gwisdë’.
it’s salty something
Something is salty.

Ga:nyo’ ha’gwisdë’ wa:di:gë’.
when something they see it
When they see something.

Gwisdë’ ehní:k.
something we two will eat it
Let’s eat something.

10.4.2.1. da’ágwisdë’ or da’gwisdë’ ‘nothing’

Da’ágwisdë’ do:ogë:’.
nothing he didn’t see it
He didn’t see anything.

Ne:’ da’ágwisdë’ neh wa:etgë’ na:yawëh.
it is nothing namely it’s bad it would happen
Nothing bad would happen.

Da’gwisdë’ dö:daga:tga’.
nothing I wouldn’t donate it
I can’t donate anything.
10.4.3. na’áhdë’ëh ‘things’

Ne:’ koh neh ganyó’agwah na’áhdë’ëh hoyédaje’.
it is and namely different things he had
And each had different things.

Di’gwah shö:h na’áhdë’ëh.
whatever just things
Just whatever things

Da:h ne:’ háé’gwah neh gado:gë:h na’áhdë’ëh.
so it is also namely certain things
So also certain things.

10.4.4. gye:h ‘some’

some very there they become strong
Some become very strong.

Ne’hoh gye:h niyó’dë:h.
that some how it is
That’s the way some are.

Onóno’da’ gye:h agyë:töh.
potatoes some I’ve planted it
I’ve planted some potatoes.

10.5. Demonstrative pronouns. The following particles ‘point to’ a third person referent.

né:gë:h ‘this’ and hi:gë:h ‘that’ (10.5.1)
né:da:h ‘this one here’ and né:ne’ ‘that one there’ (10.5.2)
ne’hoh ‘that’ or ‘there’ (10.5.3)

10.5.1. né:gë:h ‘this’ and hi:gë:h ‘that’. These demonstratives usually point directly to a referent and often correspond to English ‘this one’ and ‘that one’.

Né:gë:h wa:dëno:dë’.
this he sang
This is what he sang.

this it went to a certain point
This was how far it went.

So’jih o’dáië:h në:gë:h.
too much it’s hot this
This is too hot.
it seems emphasis it’s all this
It seems this is all of it.

good day this this time
Today is a good day.

When nē:ɡē:h functions as a demonstrative adjective, as in English ‘this man’, it is typically followed by neh ‘namely’, as in

Nē:ɡē:h neh hö:ɡweh.
this namely man
This man (this one, namely a man).

Nē:ɡē:h neh yadádehso:t.
this namely he and his grandparent
This boy and his grandmother (this, namely he and his grandparent).

Sometimes nē:ɡē:h is reduced to nē:h.

Nē:h neh hosɡē’égéhda’.
this namely warrior
This warrior.

Functioning in a parallel way is hi:ɡē:h ‘that’ or ‘that one’.

Ne:’ gahóa’ hi:ɡē:h.
it is door that
That’s a door.

Ne:’ hi:ɡē:h johsa:’.
it is that where it started
That’s where it started.

Da:h ne:’ hi:ɡē:h.
so it is that
So that’s it.

don’t what you will do that
Don’t do that!

Hi:ɡē:h neh o’sōá’.
that namely pine tree
That pine tree.

Hi:ɡē:h neh ögwayéísdahgwa’.
that namely we (pl) use it for meeting
That meeting place of ours.
10.5.2. The particle i:gë:h. Although it resembles në:gë:h and hi:gë:h in form, i:gë:h is most easily translated as the head of a relative clause, ‘the one who’.

hadí:negága’ha:sta’ i:gë:h
they enjoy drink the ones who
the ones who are alcoholics

ögwatšo:h i:gë:h
we (pl) are friends the ones who
those of us who are friends

ónö’egë:ô’ i:gë:h
the deceased mother the one who
the one who was the mother

hi:gë:h o:ya:ji’ i:gë:h
those blackberries the ones that
those that were blackberries

Dorothy i:gë:h de:yádi:nô’
Dorothy the one who they (du) lived together
the one who lived with Dorothy

10.5.3. në:dah ‘this here’ and në:ne’ ‘that there’. These two demonstratives are parallel to në:gë:h and hi:gë:h, but in this case the referent is clearly present, either because it is pointed to directly or because its identity stands out from the context. Në:dah! ‘Here!’ is often used when handing something to someone.

Në:dah sehgwí:yá’.
this here your toe
Here’s your toe (speaking to a baby).

Në:dah neh ojike’da’.
this here namely salt
Here’s the salt.

Në:dah neh nigaëno’dë:h.
this here namely how the song is
Here’s how the song is.

Në:dah i:s êhsá’hodë’.
this here you you will add it
(You will) add this!

Në:dah nëyo:da’.
this here how many days it will be
In this many days.

With në:ne’ ‘that there’ the referent is also contextually obvious.
Da’agēnōhdō’ né:ne’.
I don’t know that there
I don’t know that (in answer to a question).

those there days
In those days (we have been talking about).

Né:ne’ swa:dih niswâiwa:ita’ swēnēshage:sgoh!
those on the other side you are opposed raise your arms!
Those of you who are opposed raise your arms (to vote)!

Hodôishë’ háé’gwah né:ne’.
he’s retired also that one
He’s retired too (the man they were talking about).

Ne’: tga:wa:sa’, nā:h ni:’ de’gë:’ né:ne’ da’agatga:nye:’.
it is snowsnake emphasis I not much that I didn’t play it
As for snowsnake, I didn’t play that very much.

Gisgw sh ‘h né:’ gé:s, né:’ gé:s né:ne’,
pigs it is repeatedly it is repeatedly those
It was pigs, it was them,

agwáhehgöh háé’gwah né:ne’.
we (pl) were surviving also those
we were surviving on those too.

10.5.4. ne’hoh ‘that or there’. The referent of this very common particle is usually a
topic or a cluster of events or states, rather than a particular person or thing. It may point
to something that was introduced earlier in the discourse (10.5.4.1) or to something
distant in space (10.5.4.2). Sometimes it stands in apposition to a preceding noun
(10.5.4.3).

10.5.4.1. Distal location in discourse

Ne’hoh gáō:nih.
that it’s the reason
That’s the reason.

Ne’hoh niyó’dë:nö’.
that how it was
That’s how it was.

Ne’hoh niyâwë’oh.
that how it happened
That’s how it happened.

10.5.4.2. Distal location in space
Ne’hoh o’wadâdë’.
there it perched
It perched there.

Ne’hoh hotgâ:nyê:h.
there he’s playing
He’s playing there.

Ne’hoh ganiyô:n.
there it’s hanging
It’s hanging there.

10.5.4.3. Appositional demonstrative ne’hoh. In an example like the following, which is rare, ne’hoh may seem to function as a demonstrative adjective, ‘that fish’. But such cases are probably better interpreted in terms of a noun followed by a demonstrative that stands in apposition to it, literally ‘the fish, that one’.

Gëdzôh ne’hoh.
fish that
That fish.

10.6. The particle neh ‘namely’. Seneca pronominal prefixes express the following types of information regarding the participants in events and states.

- person (first, second, third, inclusive, exclusive)
- gender (masculine, feminine, neuter)
- number (singular, dual, plural)
- role (agent, patient, beneficiary)

A speaker may decide that a hearer needs more information concerning a participant than the above choices provide. In that case the verb may be followed by the particle neh, anticipating an amplification to follow. In examples throughout this work it will be seen that neh is sometimes followed by a comma, sometimes preceded by a comma, or the comma is absent. The comma represents the boundary of an intonation unit that verbalizes a single focus of consciousness (e.g., Chafe 1994c). Its placement suggests that the speaker is already thinking of the amplification (when the comma follows neh), or thinks of it subsequently (when the comma precedes neh), or thinks of the verb and its amplification simultaneously (when no comma is present).

10.6.1. Amplification with a noun. In the following example the speaker remembered an incident from her childhood when she went to visit some relatives and took with her a teddy bear.

Ho’ka:’ koh neh, nyagwai’,
I took it and namely bear
And I took a (teddy) bear.

The English translation might suggest that neh marks nyagwai’ ‘bear’ as a direct object, but that would distort its true function. The pronominal prefix in the verb ho’ka:’ ‘I took it’ included overt reference to a first person agent but the neuter patient had no overt marking. As explained in 3.4.2, neuter participants are overtly marked only when the
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

verb does not also mark some human participant like the first person referent here. In this case the nature of the implied neuter patient ‘it’ was amplified with the noun nyagwai’ introduced with neh.

In the next example the amplifying noun is built on the noun root *-öhw- ‘self’ (10.3), where, as in other examples below, the masculine singular agent prefix ha- repeats the prefix of the main verb. The speaker had described how this man had gone into the woods with his daughter, and this sentence made it clear that the one who went hunting was the man by himself, without the daughter.

Da:h o:nêh nä:h hadówä’të’s neh haöhwö’.  
so then emphasis he goes hunting namely he himself  
So then he went hunting by himself.

The following was spoken at the beginning of a story. The verb wá:hdë:di’ ‘he set out’ introduced a masculine singular agent. The narrator then added neh and the word for ‘man’ as an amplification.

long.ago he set out namely a man  
Long ago he set out, a man.

The word hö:gweh might seem to have provided little information beyond what was provided by the masculine singular agent prefix in wá:hdë:di’, which already established that the person who set out was a single male. But assigning this referent to the hö:gweh category activated a complex set of associations that included his role in Seneca society, his relation to his family, and his expected behavior, properties that amplified his status as more than masculine singular alone.

The inclusion of a masculine singular referent in wá:hdë:di’ did not make this referent identifiable (or ‘definite’). In order to be identifiable a referent needs prior assignment to a specific lexical category. The information supplied by a pronominal prefix alone is not sufficient to create identifiability. The translation ‘a man’ is thus more appropriate than ‘the man’, removing any temptation to regard neh as a definite article.

10.6.2. Amplification with a verb. In the following example the speaker realized that the hearer would want to know more than just the fact that the visitors were two males, so he added neh and amplified that information with yadátawak ‘a father and son’, whose form is that of a stative verb that can be translated literally ‘they are father and son to each other’ (9.4.1).

Né:ne’ wa:ya:jo’s neh, yadátawak.  
those they (masculine dual) visited namely a father and son  
They visited, a father and his son.

In the next example the speaker was talking about a man who used to walk through the woods near her house, inspecting the gas pipelines that ran through her property. She said

many things I guess repeatedly he sees it namely he is moving about  
I guess he kept seeing many things, the one who was moving about.
The word ha:gëh ‘he sees it’ contains a masculine singular agent prefix, but the speaker decided that the hearer needed to know more about this man, so she added neh and the verb do:dawë:nye:h ‘he is moving about’ with a masculine singular patient prefix. Its patient role was dictated by the stative aspect ending (3.2.1.1).

The next example is a statement attributed to the original False Face, represented by the wooden mask used for curing that is a distinctive Iroquois art form (Fenton 1987).

Êkéya’dágehá’, neh éyöga’dá:at gi’shëh.
I will help them namely they will depend on me maybe

The pronominal prefix *khe- (> ke-) in êkéya’dágehá’ ‘I will help them’ combines a first person singular agent ‘I’ with a third person plural patient ‘them’. The pronominal prefix *yök- (> yög-) in éyöga’dá:at ‘they will depend on me’ reverses these roles by combining a third person plural agent ‘they’ with a first person singular patient ‘me’. The False Face amplified the information in the first verb by explaining who it was he would help.

In the next example the amplification provides further information about the implied neuter patient of wá:tšonyá:n :’ he told about things’, which is not plural, as the English translation suggests, but ‘distributive’ (5.5.6), distributed in this case over a variety of things the man told about. The neuter singular prefix *yaw- (> òw-) of nö’ö:wëh ‘what happened’ shares that referent.

so he told about things namely specifically his wife how what happened

10.6.3. The particle sequence ne’ neh. There is a very common Seneca usage in which an assertion is introduced with the two-particle sequence ne’ neh, often the first element in a sentence. The second of these particles is the neh ‘namely’ whose function was described above. The first particle, ne’, does not correspond directly to anything found in English but its function can be approximated with the translation ‘it is’. Occasionally a Seneca speaker may express agreement with something by saying nothing more than ne’, roughly ‘it is the case’ or ‘that’s right’. More often, however, ne’ is supplemented with another particle, such as waih ‘indeed’ in ne’ waih ‘indeed so’, or nö:h ‘I guess’ in ne’ nö:h ‘I guess so’.

In the sequence ne’ neh, ne’ implies the vague neutral referent that is captured by ‘it’ in the translation ‘it is’. That referent triggers the need for the further information that is supplied by a following amplification.

Ne’ neh we:so’ ganiyayëök.
it is namely much there used to be snow
(It is the case that) there used to be a lot of snow.

Ne’ neh gëjóhgowa:nëh neh hadí:nyö’öh.
it is namely it’s a big crowd namely white men
(It is the case that) there was a big crowd of white men.
11. SYNTAX PART 2
AMPLIFYING A SPATIAL, TEMPORAL, OR MODAL MEANING

11.1. Introduction

The last chapter described ways in which the meaning of a pronominal prefix can be amplified with several kinds of pronouns, as well as with the more open possibilities introduced by the particle neh. It is also possible for the meaning of a prepronominal prefix or an aspect suffix to be amplified with an adverb. This chapter reviews adverbs of that sort, with examples of their use. They may locate an event or state in space (11.2), in time (11.3), epistemologically (11.4), or in degree (11.5).

11.2. Location in space

asdeh ‘outside, outdoors’

Ho’ge:’ asdeh.  
I went there outside  
\emph{I went outside}.

ö:gyeh ‘inside, indoors’

Ö:gyeh da’ágwatgá:nye:.  
inside we (ex pl) played there  
\emph{We played inside}.

dosgëh ‘near, nearby, close’

Dosgëh o’wa:dö:.  
close it became  
\emph{It got close}.

gazo ‘this way, in this direction’

Ga:o’ dasa:tis!  
this way move here!  
\emph{Move this way}.

gatgá’hoh ‘somewhere, anywhere’

Në:gé:h ganödayé’ gatgá’hoh.  
this town somewhere  
\emph{Somewhere in this town}.

de’gátga’hoh ‘nowhere’

De’gátga’hoh de’age:nö:.  
nowhere I didn’t go there  
\emph{I didn’t go anywhere}.
he’tgëh ‘up, overhead’

He’tgëh ho’wáhget.  
up it went there  
It went up.

hó:öweh ‘over there’

Hó:öweh tadinöge’.  
over there they live  
They live over there.

nékoh ‘here’ (also nékoh, nókoh)

Nékoh ye’jö’.  
here she stays  
She stays here.

nö’gé:’ ‘in the back, behind, the last one, afterwards, earlier’

Da:h nö’gé:’ ne’hoh.  
so in the back there  
So there in the back.

Nö’gé:’ hatgá:nyeh.  
in the back he plays  
Backfield player (football), guard (basketball).

Nö’gé:’ dwënishá:de:nyök.  
in the back in those days  
In the old days.

Nö’gé:’ shö:h o’gayagë:t neh jísda’tšëö’.  
the last just it emerged namely fawn  
The very last to emerge was the fawn

hó:gwa:h ‘toward there’ (also hó:öwë:gwa:h)

Da:h o:nëh negë’ hó:gwa:h skdake’.  
so then specifically toward there I’m running back  
So then I was running back that way.

Hó:öwë:gwa:h koh së:nöh ne’hoh hëhse:h.  
toward there and don’t there you will go there  
And don’t go over there.

sí:gwa:h ‘over there, further’

over there just the way it continued to be  
How it was over there.
we:ëh ‘far’

We:ëh osgáwak’ah hwa:ëne:’.
far next to the brush they went there
They went far off next to the brush.

11.3. Location in time

o:nëh ‘now, then, at a particular time’

O:nëh ni:’ ĕgáhdë:di’.
now I I will go
Now I will go.

O:nëh o’didwanô:nyô:’.
now we give thanks for it
Now we give thanks for it.

O:nëh wá:díashë:’.
then they held a council
Then they held a council.

Da:h o:nëh o:ya’ sa:nya:k.
so then another he married again
So then he married someone else.

Ne:’ neh o:nëh nä:h shö:h koh o’wáhsawë’.
it is namely then emphasis just and it began
And it was just then that it began.

ónëhjih ‘a long time, long ago’

Ónëhjih tgëgë:nö:’.
a long time since I’ve seen you
It’s been a long time since I’ve seen you.

Ónëhjih në:gzë:h nijâwë:ôh.
long ago this what happened
This is what happened long ago.

jotgö:n ‘always, all the time’

Jotgö:n nä:h ye:awi’ neh godá’dishë’.
always emphasis she’s carrying it namely her cane
She always carried her cane.

jâwë’ôh ‘always, each time’

Jâwë’ôh ögyátga:nyë:h.
always we are playing
We were always playing.
Jáwë’oh nā:h ne:’ agāshä:’s jotgö:n.
each time emphasis it is I remember it all the time
_I always remember it._

né:wa’ ‘at this time, today, nowadays’

Né:wa’ da’ágatö:de’.
this time I didn’t hear it
_I didn’t hear it this time._

O’gyá’dowëhdə:nö:’ në:gë:h né:wa’.
I think about things this nowadays
_I think about things nowadays._

Në:gë:h né:wa’ wë:nishäde’.
this this time today
_On this day._

ne’hó:öweh ‘at that time’

De’wádesta’ ne’hó:öweh.
it isn’t any use at that time
_It didn’t do any good at that time._

ne’hóöwëshö’ ‘in those times’

Da:h nā:h do’ó:dë:nö’ ne’hóöwëshö’ hi:gë:h.
so (emphasis) it wasn’t that way in those times those
_So it wasn’t that way in those days._

ae’ or nae’ ‘again, another thing’ (nae’ is a contraction of neh ae’.)

Da:h o’gáiwaye:ih ae’ wa’agoyá’daye:ih.
so it is proper again people gather
_And so it is proper that people gather again._

Ésgö:gë’ ae’.
I’ll see you again again.
_I’ll see you again._

(The usual way of saying goodbye.)

Da:h o:nëh ae’ në:gë:h.
so now again this
_So now this other thing._

his again and (emphasis) namely white men
_And again this was the white men._
ahsöh ‘still, yet’

Da:h ahsöh nê:geh wê:nîshäde’.
so still this day
So still today.

Da:h ne’ ahsöh ni’ agâshâ’:
so it is still I I remember it
So I still remember it.

Ahsöh nâ:h haksá’â:h.
still (emphasis) he’s a boy
He’s still a boy.

Ahsöh nâ:h de’shôwôtgâ’wêh.
still (emphasis) they haven’t released him
They haven’t released him yet.

ya:e’ ‘first, before that’

Ne’: dih ya:e’ heh nêya:wêh.
it is (new topic) first where what will happen
This is what will happen first.

Ĕhsâjö’se:’ ya:e’ nekó:gwâ:h.
you’ll visit first toward here
You’ll visit here first.

da’jiuh ‘in a short time, for a little while’

Da’jiuh nâ:h shô:h wâ:je’nît.
in a short time (emphasis) just he got enough
In just a short time he got enough.

gatga:’ ‘sometimes’

Gatga:’ gê:s wâ:hget da’jiuh shô:h.
sometimes repeatedly he comes for a little while just
Sometimes he comes for just a little while.

Gatga:’ gê:s o’tgadawê:yâ: asdeh.
sometimes repeatedly I move around outside
Sometimes I walk around outside.

Ĕsâé’he’t gatga:’.
you will stop sometimes
Stop in sometimes!
gë:s ‘habitually, repeatedly’

Ne’: gë:s neh wa:dijidodì:.’

Ne’:  it is repeatedly namely they plugged them up

They always plugged them up.

Dayágwatéyo’dzë:n gë:s.

we slid down repeatedly

We kept sliding down.

Ne’hoh nà:h gë:s jedaje’s.

there (emphasis) repeatedly she’s standing around

She kept standing around there.

jigwas or jigos or jigus ‘soon’

Jigwas ësgò:gë’.

soon I’ll see you again

I’ll see you again soon.

Dëjihnita:ë’ jigwas.

we’ll talk again soon

We’ll talk again soon.

Égö:nö:n nà:h jigos shò:h.

I’ll feed you (emphasis) soon just

I’ll feed you pretty soon.

te:dë’ ‘yesterday’

Te:dë’ sa:di:yö’.

yesterday they returned

They came back yesterday.

Ne’: nö:h neh te:dë’ nödagayéenö’.

it is I guess namely yesterday how it had been done

It must have been done yesterday.

johgwë’ ‘finally, in the end’

Johgwë’ wa’óyë’hi’sö:.’

in the end there were mistakes

In the end there were mistakes.

jë:gwah ‘abruptly in the course of events, finally, suddenly’


finally just we (in pl) will eat

Finally we’ll eat.
finally just they overcame them namely Gahkwas
Finally they got the best of the Gahkwas.

suddenly there was a noise
Suddenly there was a noise.

Ne:’ neh jë:gwah o:nëh o’gagwe:ni’.
it is namely suddenly then it was possible
Suddenly then it was possible.

(This particle is evidently related to verbs like the following.)

Wa:jë:gwah nä:h shö:h,
the first thing he knew (emphasis) just
The first thing he knew,

(The same word is used as a subordinator that means ‘if (abruptly), if it happens that’.)

Ne:’ neh jë:gwah,
it is namely if
If it happens to be the case that,

Jë:gwah shö:h o’se:gë’ ga:yë’,
if just you see it it’s lying
If you happen to see it lying,

Jë:gwah gë:s gwisdë’ da’agënöhdö’,
if repeatedly something I don’t know it
If it happens that I don’t know something,

wa’jih ‘a while ago’

Wa’jih ne’hoh hegé’sgwa’ tganödayë’.
a while ago there I was around there in town
A while ago I was there in town.

Wa’jih shö:h kéonya:nöh.
a while ago just I was telling her
I was telling her just a little while ago.

Sam nä:h wa’jih wá:at?
Sam (emphasis) a while ago he went by
Did Sam go by a little while ago?

ta’gë’:öh ‘after a while’

Ta’gë’:öh nä:h ne’hoh dödâ:da’t.
after a while (emphasis) there he stood there again
After a while he stood there again.
Ta’gê:'öh wa’a:ğë’,  
after a while she said  
After a while she said,

after a while (emphasis) it’s impossible he would go hunting again  
After a while he couldn’t go hunting anymore.

nónëhjih ‘long ago’

Ēgátšonyá:nö:’ gë:s heh niyoje:ëh nónëhjih.  
I’ll tell about things repeatedly where the way it is long ago  
I’m going to tell about the way things were long ago.

Ne:’ nónëhjih hadinögek.  
it is long ago they lived  
They lived a long time ago.

Watgá:nye’shänögek nä:h nónëhjih.  
there were a lot of games (emphasis) long ago  
There were a lot of games long ago.

11.4. Epistemic orientation. The following particles orient an event or state epistemically.

a:yë:’ ‘it seems’

A:yë:’ nè:ğë:h niyo:we’ ho’gío’kdë’.  
it seems this how far it is where I end it  
It seems it’s come to the point where I finish.

it seems she knows books  
It seems she’s well-read.

A:yë:’ ne:’ nö:h.  
it seems it is I guess  
I guess so.

do:gës ‘really, it’s true’

Do:gës nä:h ne’hoh niyáwë’öh.  
really (emphasis) that how it happened  
That’s what really happened.

Da:h o:nëh do:gës o’gihsa:k.  
so then really I looked for it  
So then I really looked for it.
Do:gës nà:h koh wa’a:gë’.

it’s true (emphasis) and she said

And it’s true, she said.

de’do:gës ‘it isn’t true’

Negë’ nà:h de’do:gës.
specifically (emphasis) it isn’t true

It isn’t really true.

dogë’ö:’ ‘in fact, actually’

Dogë’ö:’ nê:gë:ñöööhëhdë:nö:’.
in fact this they will go down the river

In fact they would go down the river.

Dogë’ö:’ wo’óhsódë’he’t.
in fact the night was over

In fact the night was over.

O’tadënö:nyö:’ koh gë:s dogë’ö:’.
he gave thanks and repeatedly in fact

And in fact he kept giving thanks.

gi’shéh ‘maybe, perhaps’

Wá:’nigö:hö’t gi’shéh nö:h nà:h.
he cheated maybe I guess (emphasis)

I guess maybe he cheated.

Dewë’nya’e:h nigá:wisda:ge:h gi’shéh.
two hundred how many dollars maybe

Maybe two hundred dollars.

Ha:nyö’öh ye:nyö’öh gi’shéh.
white man white woman maybe

A white man or white woman.

gyö’öh ‘it is said, hearsay’

Hoksá’dayë’ gyö’öh gwa’hoh.
he has a child (hearsay) from before

It is said he had a child from before.

Wáódi’se’: gyö’öh gë:s neh ga’séhdaya:we’.
they rode (hearsay) repeatedly namely the train

It is said they rode on the train.

Da:h o:nëh nà:h gyö’öh sa:ayö’.
so then (emphasis) (hearsay) he came back

So then it is said he came back.
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

i:wi:h ‘I think’

O’kéy’da:at i:wi:h.
I depend on them I think
I think I depend on them.

Hadijínóshö’óh ni’ i:wi:h ogëisdöh honënowë:h.
the men I I think the most they are liars
I think the men are the biggest liars.

I:wi:h hó:öweh hë:ge’.
I think toward there I will go there
I think I’ll go there.

waih ‘really, in fact, indeed’

Ėyógwahdö:’ waih nö:h.
we’ll lose it really I guess
I guess we’ll really lose it.

Ne:’ waih në:gë:h hënöjâ’:dahgwa’.
it is really this they use it
This is what they really use.

O’gátgehjis waih.
I got old really
I really got old.

nö:h ‘I guess’

Ne:’ nö:h agyë’his.
it is I guess I did wrong
I guess I did wrong.

Do:ges nö:h.
it’s true I guess
I guess so.

Gowënöih nö:h.
she’s crazy I guess
I guess she’s crazy.

wa:i’ ‘I thought’

Ne’hoh koh ha’degaye:i’ wa:i’.
that and it’s enough I thought
And I thought that was enough.
Wa:i’ nyó’wa’ ḋgátsónyá:nô:’.
I thought the way it is I will tell about things
I thought I would tell about how things were.

Wa:i’ ḡęgádesnack.
I thought I will have a snack
I thought I would have a snack.

gaña’ogyawh ‘different’

gaña’ogyawh heh níoënó’dë:h.
different there his song
His song was different.

gaña’ogyawh neh na’áhdë’ëh.
different namely things
Different things.

Niǹohó’dënô’ nônëhjih gaña’ogyawh.
how their lives were long ago different
How their lives were different long ago.

negë’ ‘specifically, uh’. This common particle fills a hesitation during which the speaker chooses an appropriate word to follow. Perhaps the best English translation is ‘uh’.

I:s negë’ hi:geh? 
you specifically that one
Were you (specifically) the one?

Ne:’ negë’ e:i’.
it is specifically wild cherry
It’s (specifically) wild cherry

Dayô’hasdëh negë’ dagádake’.
it speeded up specifically it ran there
It speeded up (specifically) as it ran.

Wa:di:yô’ negë’ neh tganōdayë’.
they arrived specifically namely in town
They arrived (specifically namely) in town.

11.5. Orientation in degree. The following particles orient an event or state in terms of degree.

á:ho’ôh ‘the most’

Ne:’ á:ho’ôh wadísñis.
it is the most it scares them
It scares them the most.
Neː’ á:hö’öh óiowaːnēh.  
it is the most an important matter  
*It’s the most important thing.*

it is the most they know how they are playing well  
*They knew how to play the best.*

agwas ‘very, very much’

Agwas hayá’dagwēnì:yok.  
very much he was the important one  
*He was greatly honored.*

Agwas waowōgaidaːt.  
very they defeated him  
*He was completely defeated.*

Agwas koh aknōsde’ nekoh.  
very and I treasure it here  
*And I treasure it here very much.*

â:hdak ‘very much, too much’

Ā:hdak ojiwagēh.  
too much it’s sour  
*It’s too sour.*

Ā:hdak keːdēːs hā’e’gwah.  
very much I’m good to her also  
*I was very good to her too.*

he was surprised very much there are a lot of fish  
*He was surprised there were so many fish.*

dóhdahgeh ‘very, extremely’

Dóhdahgeh onô’no:h.  
extremely it’s cold  
*It’s extremely cold.*

Dóhdahgeh owânöe’.  
extremely it’s sweet  
*It’s extremely sweet.*

ostō:h ‘a little bit’

O’wē:no:dōː’ ostō:h.  
it flooded a little  
*It flooded a little bit.*
O:nëh gë:s a:yë’ ostö:h sawíyö’he’t.
then repeatedly it seems a little it got better
Then it seemed to get a little better.

Ne’:’ shö:h neh ostö:h osgawayë’.
it is just namely a little brush
There was just a little bit of brush.

sa’ ‘little, a little way’

Sa’ niyö:we’ ha’dósa:da’t.
a little how far he stopped again
After a little way he stopped again.

Sa’ niénöhö’s’ah.
little little ones
Little babies.

Sa’ niyágöhö’ôh.
little little girl
A little girl.

sa’gwah ‘instead’

Sa’gwah hënôkdös.
instead they come
They come instead.

Ne’:’ koh gáiö:nih sa’gwah ne’hoh gi’jö’.
it is and it’s the reason instead there I live
And that’s the reason I live there instead.

shö:h ‘just, only’

five how many dollars (emphasis) just
It was just five dollars.

Dayótgé’ò:je’ shö:h.
it was getting worse just
It was just getting worse.

Da:h dagésgatgwëh shö:h nä:h i’:’ gë:s.
so I laughed just (emphasis) I repeatedly
So I just laughed.
to:hah ‘almost, nearly’

O’jógéhö:di’ o:nëh to:hah.
when it becomes summer then almost
*When it’s almost summer.*

To:hah égyënë:da’t.
almost I’ll have it ready
*I almost have it ready.*

To:hah dewadogwá’tši:h niwadogwá’shä’:h.
almost two spoonfuls small spoonfuls
*Almost two teaspoons.*

we:so’ ‘a lot, much’

We:so’ ne’ wa’ogyësdë’.
a lot it is she taught me
*She taught me a lot.*

Ne’ we:so’ ha:négehak.
it is a lot he used to drink it
*He used to drink a lot of it.*

We:so’ negë’ ha’de:yö:h nö’ga:je’:
*a lot specifically many things I did
*I did a lot of different things.*
12. SYNTAX PART 3
AMPLIFYING THE MEANING OF AN ENTIRE VERB

12.1. Introduction

This chapter describes ways in which the meaning of a main verb can be amplified by the addition of a subordinate verb which is introduced by a subordinating particle. Spatial subordination is described in 12.2, temporal subordination in 12.3, manner subordination in 12.4, and purposive subordination in 12.5. Attribution of speech is described in 12.6, and attribution of thought in 12.7. Embedded questions are described in Chapter 15.

12.2. Spatial subordination

By far the most common spatial subordinator is hë:óweh ‘where’. The subordinate verb may amplify the meaning of the translocative prefix in the main verb, expressed by the initial h- in the following example.

Ho’gáhge:t gë:s  hë:óweh  o’ténöde’sää’.
I went there repeatedly where they voted
I kept going there where they voted.

The translocative prefix may itself be supplemented by the particle ne’hoh ‘there’.

Ne’hoh  hëdwe:’,  hë:óweh  tëni’jö’.
there  we will go there  where they are staying there
Let us go there  where they are staying.

The main verb may have an intrinsically spatial meaning, as with the verb meaning ‘stay (somewhere)’.

Ne:’  shö:sh  neh  gi’jö’  hë:óweh  knöge’.
it is just  namely  I stay  where I live
I just stay where I live.

The subordinate verb may function as a spatial complement to a cognitive verb.

also  I learned  where it is possible  I will pick it
I also learned  where I could pick it.

Agëñöhdö’  háé’gwah  hë:óweh  ne:’  neh  jo:yë’.
I know it  also  where it is  namely  it is there
I also know where there is some.

Another spatial subordinator is gatgá’hoh ‘anywhere’.

Gë:s  waenödë’  gatgá’hoh  hwa:e’.
repeatedly  I followed him  anywhere  he went there
I always followed him anywhere he went.
Similar in usage is **gawédi'gwah** ‘wherever’.

| Wa:agë’ së’eh näh, gawédi’gwah nijawenö:h hi:gë:h. |
|---|---|
| he saw it because emphasis wherever how it has come that one |

Because he saw wherever that one came from.

The particle **gáédi’gwah** is still another alternative.

| Ho’she:’ hodé’gwéjë’, gáédi’gwah ho’we:’. |
|---|---|
| it chased him there he was running away wherever it went there |

*It chased him as he was running away, wherever it went.*

### 12.3. Temporal subordination

There are two commonly used temporal subordinators whose functions overlap. Unlike the spatial subordination in 12.2, temporal subordination typically precedes the main verb.

The simplest temporal subordinator is **ga:n yö’** ‘when, as soon as’.

| Ga:n yö’ nä:h wa’ögwagë’ dé’, wa’ákiyáshë:’. |
|---|---|
| when emphasis we got tired of it we laid them down |

As soon as we got tired of it, we laid them down.

The other common temporal subordinator is **no:nëh** ‘when’, transparently a contraction of **neh** ‘namely’ and **o:nëh** ‘then, at a particular time’. It often occurs in the sequence **ne:’ no:nëh** ‘it is (the case that) when...’ The main verb may be introduced with a resumptive **o:nëh** ‘then’.

| Ne:’ no:nëh wa’öjohgwé’he’t, o:nëh ne:’ wá:tšo:wi’. |
|---|---|
| it is namely when the crowd settled down then it is he told about it |

When the crowd settled down, then he told about it.

| Ne:’ no:nëh o’dwás’gë:’, o:nëh ne’hoh wá:’wasda:yá’t. |
|---|---|
| it is when it opened its mouth then there he put in the stick |

When it opened its mouth, then he put the stick in there.

**Ga:n yö’** and **no:nëh** sometimes occur in sequence.

| Ne:’ ga:n yö’ no:nëh o’gájashe:nö’, o:nëh ne:’ o’génöhdö:nyö:’. |
|---|---|
| it is when when I go to bed then it is I think |

When I go to bed, then I think.

A temporal subordinating particle sequence is **o:nëh wa:eh** ‘before’, consisting of **o:nëh** followed by **wa:eh** ‘just then, at that specific time’:

| Eodiga:yëh o:nëh wa:eh ogwe:nyö:h ha’gwís’dë’. |
|---|---|
| they will consent then just then it is possible something |

They will give their consent before anything is possible.
The particle *wëdôdi’gwah* ‘whenever’ is used when the specific time is left open.

*Ne:* waih neh ḋ:nôhsôdaye:ôni’ wëdôdi’gwah ẹyagoyá’daye:ih.

*They will set a night whenever people will gather.*

12.4. Manner subordination

The particle *heh* has no single or obvious English translation. It appears very often before a verb that begins with the partitive prefix, where it might be translated ‘how, in what manner, at what point, to what degree’ depending on the meaning of the verb.

*heh* niyó’dë:ih
*how it is a certain way*
*the way it is*

*heh* niyoje:ëh
*how it has been done*
*how it was done*

*heh* niyâwë’ôh
*how it has happened*
*what happened*

The sequence *heh niyo:we’* ‘how far it is’ can be translated ‘until’.

*heh* niyo:we’ sa:ayô’ neh ha’nih
*how as far as it is he came back namely father*
*until father returned*

If the subordinate verb lacks the partitive prefix and if that verb has a spatial meaning, the best translation may be ‘where’.

*Wa:di:yô’ heh todinôda:yë’.*
*they arrived where they camp there*
*They arrived where they camped.*

*Ganyo’: ēgádakenôjé:se:k, heh ẹyôôêdza:de:k.*
*game it will continue to run about where the earth will be*
*Game will continue to be running about where the earth will be.*

12.5. Purposive subordination

The usual way of expressing purpose, often the purpose of going somewhere, is with a verb whose base ends with the andative derivational suffix followed by the purposive suffix, but without either the factual or the future modal prefix (5.5.8.1). The last word in the following example can be reconstructed as *shôkh-ihnôk-h-e’, where -h- is the andative and -e’ is the purposive.*
Da:h  o:nêh  nä:h  wa:ayô'  neh,  shô:kî:nôke'.
so then emphasis he arrived namely he was to get us
So then he arrived to get us.

Occasionally a purposive meaning is implied by an andative verb alone, without the purposive suffix. Here the last word can be reconstructed as *o’-k-yêta-kwa-h-a’, where again -h- is the andative, followed by the punctual aspect suffix -a’.

O:nêh  asdeh  ho’ge’:  o’gyêdagwâ’:
then outside I went there I went and got firewood
Then I went outside to get firewood.

12.6. Attributing speech. The principal verb root of saying is the irregular *-atö/ë/i-. The form *-atö- occurs in the habitual aspect, *-ë- in the stative, and *-i- in the punctual and imperative. However, with a feminine singular agent the punctual form is *-ë- and the feminine singular agent form is *yak-. Thus, for example

ha:d:oh  ‘he says’
ha:we:h  ‘he has said’
wâë’  ‘he said’ (from *wa’hai’)
yö:dôh  ‘she says’
gâ:we:h  ‘she has said’
wâ’a:ge’  ‘she said’ (from *wa’yakê’)

The verb of saying may simply precede a direct quote.

Da:h  o:nêh  wa’a:ge’,  ‘Sê:nôh  shô:h  ëhsâtga:nya’:\nso then she said don’t just you will play with it
So then she said, ‘Just don’t play with it.’

Ne:\’  neh  waë’,  ‘Ne:\’  dih  ya:e’  heh  nêya:weh.\’
it is namely he said it is topic first how it will happen
He said, ‘This is what will happen first.’

It is common in storytelling for the attribution to follow the quote, and to be preceded by the hearsay particle gyô’ôh.

‘Asdeh  nô:h  gotgá:nye:\’;  gyô’ôh  wa’a:ge’.
outside I guess she’s playing hearsay she said
‘I guess she’s playing outside,’ she said.

‘Heh  nihshâ:no:we’;  gyô’ôh  waë’.\nhow you run fast hearsay he said
‘You’re such a fast runner,’ he said.

Although they are comparatively rare, there are occasional examples of indirect speech in which there is a shift from first to third person. In the following example, what he actually said was Owisâ’géshô’  sa:kât  ‘I went back on the ice’. 
12.7. Attributing thought. Direct thoughts are expressed in a parallel way.

Ne:’ neh wa’e’, ‘Ne:’ neh ēwōgatō:de:k.’

it is namely she thought it is namely I will hear it
She thought, ‘I will hear it.’


so then he thought it’s impossible he might pass me that one
So then he thought, ‘That one can’t pass me.’

In the following examples the attribution is accompanied by gyō’ōh and follows the quoted thought. Here the aspect is stative.

‘Ne:’ ha’dā:yā’di:h, gyō’ōh i:ye:h.

it is he’s all alone hearsay she is thinking
‘He’s all alone,’ she was thinking.

‘A:ye:’ gwach i:’ a:yōgwáya’dágeha’,’ gyō’ōh i:eh.

it seems but us it should help us hearsay he is thinking
‘But it seems it should help us,’ he was thinking.

There are also occasional examples of indirect thought, with a shift from first to third person. In this example his actual thought was áeyá’dohda:ah ‘I will put him out’.

Wa:e’ o:wōyá’dohda:ah.

he thought he would put him out
He thought he would put him out (in a ball game).

In another example of indirect thought his actual thought was ēkéshe’da:ni:nō’ ‘I will buy them a bottle’.

I:eh gyō’ōh neh, ēgōshé’da:ni:nō’.

he is thinking hearsay namely he will buy them a bottle
He was thinking he would buy them a bottle.
13. SYNTAX PART 4
WORD ORDER

Seneca is a language that might be described as exhibiting ‘free word order’, which is to say that its words are not ordered in a familiar pattern such as subject-verb-object, subject-object-verb, or the like. In Chapters 10-12 we saw how words and phrases that amplify the content of a verb quite naturally follow that verb. The manner in which the ordering of words within phrases is determined by a variant of ‘information flow’ was described in Chafe (1994c: 156-159). That discussion is summarized here.

While describing a birthday celebration at the Longhouse, the person being celebrated said

1 Gëdzöh oënö’ waënödëno:dë’.
fish its song they sang it
They sang fish dance.

The first two words, gëdzöh oënö’, literally ‘fish its song’, are a lexicalized reference to a familiar Seneca dance. As with lexicalized phrases in general, they occur only in a fixed order. Of more interest is that fact that the fish dance was mentioned first in the phrase, the reverse of the English order. From an English point of view it might be thought that 1 shows the order object-verb, but Seneca is an agent-patient language where subjects and objects do not play a role. One might then hypothesize that 1 shows a patient-verb order, but that possibility is belied by 2, where the patient comes second.

2 O’kniyö:dö’ gwisdé’shö’öh.
I hung them up some things
I hung up some things.

Prior to 1 it had been said that various songs (or dances) had been performed, so the idea of singing was already given. The ordering in 1 might thus seem to show a principle of new information before given. However, that hypothesis is disconfirmed by the fact that in 2 it was the entire event, not just the hanging up, that was new.

Here we can evoke the principle of ‘newsworthiness’ (Mithun 1987, 1995b), where the first element in a phrase is the most newsworthy. The speaker of 2 saw no need to specify the particular objects she had been hanging up, and perhaps did not even remember what they were. It was the action of hanging them up that was newsworthy, because her physical condition made it difficult for her. The unimportant identity of what she was hanging up was expressed only in the most general terms.

The principle can be stated as follows. A noun whose referent is more newsworthy than the remainder of a phrase appears before the verb, whereas a less newsworthy nominal referent appears after the it. The nominal expression need not be a patient, as it was in 1 and 2. In 3 it was the idea of the white woman.

3 Ye:nyö’öh shö:ch yökdös sedëhjiah.
white woman just she comes in the morning
A white woman just comes in the morning.
In 4 we see the opposite. The idea of the man was already given, and the addition of the wife did not increase the newsworthiness of this referent. What was newsworthy was the idea of their running around.

4 Ne’ o’tšɛ:hdɑ:to:’ neh yada:tšo:’.
   it is they two ran around namely man and wife
   The man and his wife ran around.

Mithun (1995a) suggested that this ‘newsworthy first’ strategy takes advantage of the heightened pitch and amplitude that are likely to be found at the beginning of an intonation unit. It does provide a satisfying explanation for word order in Seneca and probably in other Northern Iroquoian languages. Certainly, however, newsworthiness needs to be more clearly defined.
14. SYNTAX PART 5
COORDINATION

14.1. Introduction

This chapter describes ways in which two or more constituents of a sentence may be conjoined.

14.2. Simple juxtaposition. Two verbs may be simply juxtaposed with no overt marker of coordination.

O’tadenyó’daga:i’ wa:nyo’.
he took advantage of it he killed it
He took advantage of it and killed it.

O’tega:đë’ nä:h gyö’ōh dosgëh neh wa’ödădë’.
it flew emphasis hearsay nearby namely it perched
It flew and perched nearby.

14.3. koh ‘and’.

The conjunction koh ‘and’ makes the coordination explicit and joins constituents of equal importance. It is frequently postposed, as in the first example.

Ha’dé:yö:h níájehak, hédzó’yasgwá’ koh.
many things he used to do it he used to fish and
He used to do many things, and he used to fish.

O’tënojônö’ ae’ né:wa’ koh wá:tgwni’.
they raced again this time and he won
They raced and again this time he won.

Dedzá:ôh ogwë’ö:we’ka’, ga:nyö’öka:’ koh age:ta:’.
both Indian ways white ways and I’m talking
I’m talking both Indian and English.

14.4. háé’gwah or há:’gwah ‘also, too’

Whereas koh joins constituents of equal weight, háé’gwah ‘also, too’ is attached to a constituent that supplements preceding information.

it’s possible he will take money namely the other side also
It’s possible he will take money from the other side too.

In the following example the role of the mother and grandmother, who are conjoined with koh, is shown with háé’gwah to be supplementary to the role of the speaker (who saw him first).
Wa’áki:nö:k  neh  ökíno’eh,  koh  neh  akso:t,
we summoned her  namely  our mother  and  namely  our grandmother

We called our mother,  and our grandmother,

waôwögê’  háé’gwah  ne’hoh  ita:t.
they saw him  also  there  he’s standing there
they also saw him standing there.

14.5. gi:h or gi’shëh  ‘or’

Corresponding to English ‘or’, gi:h usually conjoins two nominal referents.

Mary  gi:h  Jessica.
Mary or Jessica
Mary or Jessica.

Ye:yádöhgwá’  gi:h  ga:yádöshá’.
pencil or paper
pencil or paper

Gi’shëh  ‘maybe’ performs a similar function. It may also relate two nominal referents.

Ha:nyó’öh  ye:nyó’öh  gi’shëh.
white man  white woman  maybe
A white man or white woman.

Or it may relate the pronominal participants of two verbs.

Èshadiga:nya’k  èswödiga:nya’k  gi’shëh.
they (masculine sg) will pay  they (feminine sg) will pay  maybe
The men or women will pay.

In the following sequence gi’shëh appears with each of the constituents, mirroring the ‘either...or...’ of the English.

Da:yagyádi:ak  sô:ga:’,
we (ex du) might live together  somebody
Somebody could live with me,

ye:nyó’öh  gi’shëh,  øgwé’ö:weh  gi’shëh.
white woman  maybe  Indian  maybe
either a white woman or an Indian.

14.6. gwa:h  heh  ‘but’

The meaning of English ‘but’ is expressed with the particle sequence gwa:h heh. In the first example the speaker was contrasting the Indian children who spoke Seneca with the white adults who did not.
Ne:’ neh do:di’nígöeyë:da’s,
it is namely they don’t understand it
They didn’t understand it,

    gwa:h heh ögwá’nígöeyë:da’s ni:’ neh hadíksa’shö’öh.
    but we understand it we namely children
    but we children did understand it.

Gwa:h heh do’ódesdö’ a:yë:’.
but it didn’t do any good it seems
But it didn’t seem to do any good.

14.7. së’ëh ‘because’

Corresponding to English ‘because’ is Seneca së’ëh.

Awédetgä:de’ së’ëh dösayogëhö:di’ o:nëh.
it’s pleasant because it’s summer again now
It’s pleasant because it’s summer again now.

Ha’degagö:n së’ëh gyö’öh.
it’s necessary because hearsay
Because it’s necessary.

Ne:’ së’ëh neh knöe’s.
it is because namely I like it
It’s because I like it.
15. QUESTIONS

15.1. Introduction.

Questions fall into two major classes: ‘yes-no questions’ which ask the addressee to confirm or disconfirm an assertion, and ‘information questions’ which ask the addressee to provide the kind of information specified by a question word.

15.2. Yes-no questions. Unlike the other Five Nations languages, Seneca lacks a particle that would signal a yes-no question, which is distinguished from a declarative sentence by intonation alone. The final syllable of a yes-no question is pronounced with a level (as opposed to falling) pitch, which may be either in the middle of or near the bottom of the speaker’s range, as illustrated in the following examples. Figure 15.1 compares the falling intonation contour of wa’ójashë: ‘she lay down’ with the mid level contour of wa’ójashë: ‘did she lie down?’ Figure 14.2 compares the falling contour of esáhdö: ‘you lost it’ with the low level contour of esáhdö: ‘did you lose it?’

Figure 15.1. “She lay down.” versus “Did she lie down?”

Figure 15.2. “You lost it.” versus “Did you lose it?”
15.3. Information questions.

The following particles and particle sequences are used to introduce information questions.

sö:h ‘who?’
wë:döh ‘when?’
ga:weh ‘where?’
do:h ‘how much, how many?’
dë’êh ‘what?’ or ‘how?’
dë’êh na’ot ‘what kind, what way?’
dë’êh go:wa:h ‘why?’

Examples:

Sö:h nö:ye:’?
who? he did it
Who did it?

Wë:döh nö:ye:’?
when? he did it
When did he do it?

Ga:weh snöge’?
where? you dwell
Where do you live?

Do:h nisá:wisda:yë’?
how much? how much money you have
How much money do you have?

Dë’êh na’ot hayás:o:nö’?
what what kind his name was
What was his name?

Dë’êh go:wa:h o’snyáde’go’?
why you ran away
Why did you run away?

Dë’êh nö:ye:’?
what? or how? he did it
What did he do? or How did he do it?

The last example is ambiguous. The verb root *-yer- ‘do’ is always arbitrarily accompanied by the partitive prepronounal prefix, visible here in the initial n. With the meaning ‘What did he do?’ the partitive prefix is required by the root and contributes no additional meaning of its own, as with the translation ‘What
did he do?’. Alternatively, the partitive prefix may add the meaning ‘how?’ leading to the translation ‘How did he do it?’.

15.4. Embedded questions

An embedded yes-no question may be introduced with the subordinator jë:gwah ‘if, whether’.

Wáéya:ödö’ jë:gwah ha:hö’ nö:ye’. I asked him whether he himself he did it
I asked him if he did it.

Da’agénöhdö’ jë:gwah ne’ nö:ye’.
I don’t know if it is he did it
I don’t know if he did it.

With an embedded information question one of the particles listed in 15.3 may occur in place of jë:gwah.

Wáéya:ödö’ sö:h nö:ye’.
I asked him who he did it
I asked him who did it.

Wáéya:ödö’ wë:döh nö:ye’.
I asked him when he did it
I asked him when he did it.

Wáéya:ödö’ dë’ëh go:wa:h nö:ye’.
I asked him why he did it
I asked him why he did it

15.5. The irrealis marker di’gwah. Other constructions make use of the irrealis marker di’gwah, which appears sometimes as a separate word and sometimes as a clitic attached to one of the particles listed in 15.3. It may occur by itself as a way of admitting a lack of knowledge.

A:ge:h, di’gwah!
oh dear (irrealis)
Oh dear, I don’t know!

Di’gwah nä:h nëya:wëh.
(irrealis) (emphasis) what will happen
I don’t know what will happen.

With an embedded irrealis yes-no question the subordinator may be simply di’gwah, indicating a greater degree of uncertainty than with jë:gwah.

Da’agénöhdö’ di’gwah na’ot nö:ye’.
I don’t know (irrealis) what kind he did it
I don’t know what he did.
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

Da’agénóhdö’ di’gwah go:wa:h nö:ye’.
I don’t know (irrealis) why he did it
I don’t know why he did it.

O’gádáóhdı:yos né:gé:h di’gwah na’ot.
I listen hard to it this (irrealis) what
I listen hard to whatever this is.

When di’gwah is cliticized to an interrogative particle it indicates greater uncertainty than the interrogative particle alone. Só:di’gwah by itself can be translated ‘whoever’.

O’tšadádi:wa’is, só:di’gwah ogéisdöh ha’hásdešowanéh.
they discussed it whoever it is more he has great power
They discussed, whoever was the more powerful.

Da’agénóhdö’ só:di’gwah nö:ye’.
I don’t know whoever he did it
I don’t know whoever did it.

De’swágasha:a’s só:di’gwah waë’.
I don’t remember it whoever he said it
I don’t remember whoever said it.

The same pattern is followed with dé’ëh ‘what?’, wë:döh ‘when?’, and ga:weh ‘where’.

De’swágasha:a’s dé’ëdi’gwah waë’.
I don’t remember it whatever he said it
I don’t remember whatever he said it.

De’swágasha:a’s wëdödi’gwah waë’.
I don’t remember it whenever he said it
I don’t remember whenever he said it.

Da’agénóhdö’ wëdödi’gwah nö:ye’.
I don’t know whenever he did it
I don’t know whenever he did it.

Da’agénóhdö’ gawédi’gwah nö:ye’.
I don’t know wherever he did it
I don’t know wherever he did it.

15.6. The subordinator ádi’gwah. The subordinator may also be ádi’gwah, obviously related to di’gwah but a different word. It is translatable, like jë:gwah, as ‘if, whether’, but with greater uncertainty.

Ne:’ neh wá:ga:ödö’ ádi’gwah gyëtwas.
it is namely he asked me whether I plant
He asked me if I plant.
Da:h neh wá:ga:ödö́́: ádi’gwah wiyóaje’.  
so namely he asked me whether it’s doing well  
So he asked me if it’s doing well.

The same ádi’gwah is used in an information question where English might use ‘what’ or ‘how’.

they (dual) asked what how it is the opinion  
They asked what the opinion was.

Da:h né́’ da’agénóhdö́́: ádi’gwah në:gë:h nö:di:ye’:’.  
do it is I don’t know how this how they did it  
So I don’t know how they did this.

15.7. Other usages. Occasionally an indirect question will appear without any of the above subordinators. If the question involves which instance of a category is the correct one, na’ot, roughly ‘what kind’ or ‘which instance’, may be used alone.

De’swágasha:a’s na’ot gaya:söh.  
I don’t remember it what kind it is called  
I don’t remember what it’s called.

The verb root *-wyëh- ‘know how’ appears without a subordinator in the following.

De’géyëöh a:gatí’sdaé’ë.  
I don’t know how I should talk  
I don’t know how to talk.
16. IMPERATIVES

16.1. Introduction

The minimal imperative verb structure is shown in Figure 16.1. It is identical with the minimal structure containing the habitual and stative aspects shown in Figure 3.1 except for the presence of the imperative suffix.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>pronominal prefix</th>
<th>verb base</th>
<th>aspect suffix</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>agent</td>
<td>root</td>
<td>imperative</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>patient</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>transitive</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 16.1. Minimal imperative verb structure

16.2. Forms of the imperative suffix

The form of the imperative suffix is identical with that of the punctual suffix (3.3.3), except that wherever the punctual has a final ’ (glottal stop), the imperative has h.

- **sahdē:dih** ‘go!’, cf. **o’gáhdē:di’** ‘I went’
- **dwatgwe:nih** ‘let’s win!’ , cf. **edwátgwe:ni’** ‘we won’
- **snōnō’dotših** ‘peel the potatoes!’, cf. **o’knōnō’dotši’** ‘I peeled the potatoes’
- **snegeäh** ‘drink it!’, cf. **o’knégei’** ‘I drank it’
- **sajē:h** ‘sit down!’, cf. **o’ga:jē’** ‘I sat down’
- **satis** ‘move over!’ , cf. **o’ga:sis** ‘I moved over’
- **hešenōwō’s** ‘help him!’ , cf. **wacenyō:wo’s** ‘I helped him’
- **se’ho:we:k** ‘cover it!’, cf. **o’gé’ho:we:k** ‘I covered it’
- **sashe:t** ‘count it’, cf. **o’ga:sashe:t** ‘I counted it’

16.3. The form of the second person agent prefix in imperatives

In imperatives the second person agent prefix is descended from an earlier *θ- (theta), as suggested by the form of this prefix in the Tuscarora language. In most environments this θ has fallen together with Seneca s and is thus indistinguishable from the second person agent prefix in non-imperative verbs. However, before a base that begins with y this prefix in imperatives is dz- or j- depending on the speaker; see 2.3), and before a base beginning with i it is consistently j- for all speakers.

- **sajē:h** (*satyē:h*) ‘sit down!’
- **segoh** (*seko:h*) ‘pick it!’
- **i:dzə’k** or **i:ja’k** (*iθyə’k*) ‘cut it!’
- **i:dzēn** or **i:jēn** (*iθyēnt*) ‘hit it!’
ji’ya:k (*θi’yak) ‘shoot it’
jihsa:k (*θihsak) ‘look for it’

16.4. Imperatives with prepronominal prefixes

With the repetitive, cislocative, and translocative prefixes, imperatives add the form of the factual, so that the imperative forms of those prefixes are sa-, ta-, and ho’. The duplicative and partitive forms, however, are simply te- and ni-.

With the repetitive:

sasáhge:t (*sasahket) ‘come back!’
saseganya’k (*sasekanya’k) ‘pay it back!’

With the cislocative:

dasa:dih (*tasatih) ‘throw it here!’
dasa:tes (*tasathihst) ‘move this way!’
da:dzöh or da:jöh (*taθyöh) ‘come in!’

With the translocative:

ho’sátgatoh (*ho’satkathoh) ‘look at it there!’
ho’sáde’sgoh (*ho’aste’skoh) ‘dive in!’

With the duplicative:

desë:hda:t (*tesërëhtat) ‘run!’
desawënye:h (*tesawërye:h) ‘stir it!’

With the partitive:

niya:weh (*niyawëh) ‘let it happen!’
ni:dze:h or ni:je:h (*niθyerh) ‘do it!’

With the contrastive:

ta’sa:je:h (*tha’satyerh) ‘keep still, calm down!’
ta’owö’niğö’deh (*thahöwa’niköhra’teh) ‘let him not be cheated!’

With the cislocative prefix and with the duplicative prefix functioning in place of the repetitive (4.4.1.2):

dödásha:h (*tötashawh) ‘bring it back!’
döda:dzöh (*tötaθyöh) ‘come back in!’
As described in 4.9.3, a construction that consists of the contrastive and hypothetical prefixes and the imperative suffix is the way of expressing a negative future.

*taedwayne:h ("thaetwayerh) ‘we won’t do it’
*tö:sadif:waje:öh ("thöösatrihwayeröh) ‘you will not have an accident’

16.5. Prohibitions

The prohibitive particle meaning ‘don’t!’ is either së:nöh or hë:noh, with së:nöh more common in the data examined here. It is usually followed by a verb containing the future prefix and the imperative suffix.

Së:nöh hëhse:h!
don’t you will go there
*Don’t go there!

Së:nöh nëhsa:je:h hi:gë:h!
don’t you will do it that
*Don’t do that!

It is often separated from its complement verb by another particle or particles.

Së:nöh shö:h ne’hoh ĕhsé’se:k!
don’t just there you will continue to be around
*Just don’t be around there!

It may also occur without a complement.

Së:nöh waë’.
don’t he said
*‘Don’t!’ he said.

With a complement containing the hypothetical modal prefix it expresses a negative purpose.

Ēhsátgaëök së:nöh so’jih ojìsgwa’ ha:wadö’.
you will keep watching it don’t too mush it might become
*Keep watching it so that it doesn’t become too mushy!

16.6. The use of future verbs rather than imperatives

Seneca often uses verbs in the future mode where English would use an imperative. This usage is prevalent, for example, when issuing instructions, as in the following directions for making buttermilk biscuits.
1 O:nö’ ėhsóhga:’ gakse:s.
   oil you will spread it on it long pan
   You will grease a baking pan.

2 Oté’shā’ ėhsē’ gadzé’geh.
   flour you will put it in a bowl
   You will put some flour in a bowl.

3 Ėhsyadō:ni’.
   you will make a hole
   You will make a well (in the flour).

4 Sēh niwadogwá’tsi:h yesâ:ta’ ėhsē’.
   three full spoons baking powder you will put it in
   You will put in three tablespoons of baking powder.

5 Sgashé’di:h onô’gwatgē:h ėhsē’oto’.
   one quart buttermilk you will pour it in
   You will pour in a quart of buttermilk.

6 Gahsigwâ’: ėhsyâ’:’dak,
   fork you will use it
   You will use a fork,

7 Ėhsadeyē:ös,
   you will be careful
   carefully,

8 dēhsawënye:’ neh onô’gwatgē:h.
   you will stir it namely buttermilk
   you will stir the buttermilk.

9 Ostô:shö’ôh koh dēhses neh oté’shā’,
   small amounts and you will mix it namely flour
   And you will mix in small amounts of flour,

10 niyo:we’ oshē’â’ ėwō:dō’.
    until dough it will become
    until it will become dough.

11 Ėhsadédó:ek neh oshē’â’.
    you will knead it namely flour
    You will knead the flour.
12 Ostö: h oshë’ä’ ēhša’k,  
a small amount dough you will break it
You will break off a little dough,

13 ēhsátwe’nö:ni’ koh.  
you will make a ball and
and you will shape it into a ball.

15 Ėhsés'at ne’hoh nëhše:’.  
you will use it up that you will do it
You will use up the rest the same way.

15 Gakse:sgēh koh ēhséönyö:’.
on the long pan and you will put them on it
And you will place them on the baking pan.,

16 Ėhsátahgö:dë’ niyo:we’ ēga:ih.  
you will bake it until it will be done
You will bake it until done.
17. INTERJECTIONS

17.1. Exclamations

A:geh!  ‘My goodness! Oh dear!’
A:gyeh!  ‘’
Gye:h!  ‘’
E:gyeh!  ‘’
Agya:h!  ‘Ouch!’
Aju:h!  ‘Brrrr!’ (shivering)
Ä:’!  ‘Yuk!’
Dza:gon!  (word of encouragement)
Dzok!  ‘Well then immediately!’
Gyo:ho!  ‘Gee whiz!’
Ha:gyeh!  ‘Oh boy!’
Ha:h!  ‘Hah!’
Hao’!  ‘OK! Go for it!’
Ho:h!  ‘Ahah!’
Hoho:h!  ‘Ahah!’
Ho’ostö:h!  ‘Not at all!’
Në:dah!  ‘Here! (offering something)’
O:h!  ‘Oh!’
Wä:tsinëh!  ‘Oh go on!’
Wäyë:’?  ‘Isn’t it?, N’est-ce pas?’

17.2. Commands

Gajih!  ‘Come here!’
Gö’geh!  ‘Hurry up!’
Si:gwah!  ‘Go away! Scram!’

17.3. Responses

Ē:h.  ‘Yes.’
Hē:’h.  ‘No.’
Nya:wëh.  ‘Thank you.’
Nyoh.  ‘So be it! Amen!’

17.4. Greetings and goodbyes

Hae’.  ‘Hi!’
Nya:wëh sgë:nö’.  ‘Hello.’
Sadōgweta'?  ‘How are you?’
Ēsgö:ge’ ae’.  ‘I’ll see you again.’
Dëjihnyadade:ge’.  ‘We’ll see each other again.’
Dëjihnyatàr’së’.  ‘Our paths will cross.’

165
18. EXAMPLE TEXTS

The four texts that follow were chosen to be representative of several different Seneca genres. Extended examples of ceremonial language are available in Chafe 1961.

Text 1 is a short extemporaneous description of Ed Curry’s gardening activities, invented on the spot when he was asked in early fieldwork to provide an example of the Seneca language. He was a master orator, accustomed to delivering ritual speeches and telling stories, and here he showed his ability to create a short piece of unplanned language on the spot.

Text 2 is taken from a conversation between two friends, Lee Hemlock and Stanley Huff, recorded by Alberta Austin on the Cattaraugus Reservation.

Text 3 is one of several stories that explain the origin of the Seneca masks that are known as False Faces (gagóhsa⁸, described in Fenton 1987). This version, told by Solon Jones, is one of several quite different stories regarding their origin.

Text 4 by Roy Jimerson is a semi-historical, beautifully told narrative that provides an interesting window on the Seneca defeat and subsequent assimilation of the Gá:hgwá'gé:onó⁹, who lived to the west of them. They may have been the people known variously as Neutrals, Wenros, or Gahkwas, although Jimerson called them in English Mingos. Here I use the name Gahkwas, which comes closest to the Seneca name. Apparently by the 20th century they had come to be confused with Meskwakis (Fox), some of whom were also adopted by the Senecas (Hunter 1956). A version of this story, told in English by a certain Mr. Parker, is in Caswell 2007 [1892]: 255-256.

Each numbered segment of these texts represents a prosodically defined unit: either a sentence with a final (usually falling) pitch contour, shown with a period, or a nonfinal intonation unit with a nonfinal (level or rising) pitch contour, shown with a comma. The first line of each numbered segment shows the words that were said, the second line shows a breakdown of complex words into the reconstructed forms of component morphemes, the third line glosses those morphemes, the fourth line provides a translation for each word, and the fifth line is a free translation of the entire segment.

Words in the first line are shown as they are pronounced in isolation, ignoring various changes that may have occurred in connected speech. Citing a word in a consistent form, as here, has the advantage of relating it to a consistent dictionary entry, while at the same time illustrating the results of the word-level phonological processes described in Chapter 2. Actual pronunciations may vary, however, depending on the discourse context in which a word is uttered. The word-level prosody described in Chapter 2 may be supplemented or overridden by discourse prosody not fully described in this work. Chafe (1993) described the stylized prosody of two ceremonial speeches, but did not account in detail for the more complex prosody of spontaneous speech.

Telling about an incident in her childhood, one Seneca speaker said this.

---

⁸ The abbreviation LK is used for a ‘stem-joiner’ vowel (5.4.2).
Heh niyo:we’ sa:ayō’ neh ha’nih.
how how far he returned namely father

Until father returned.

A partial attempt to capture the pronunciation of this excerpt might be the following.

He niyowe’ sa:ayō’ ná:’nih.
Until he returned namely father

We can note first of all that heh niyo:we’ is an idiom translatable as ‘until’. It was pronounced here very softly and rapidly with a shortening of the o in niyo:we’. The substantive words sa:ayō’ and ná:’nih were pronounced more loudly and slowly. The final h of both heh and neh was lost, as often happens to a word-final h when another word immediately follows. When the next word began with an h, an intermediate stage such as ne ha’nih, would be likely to lose what was now an intervocalic h, leaving ne a’nih, which would lead further to the contracted and accented sequence ná:’nih. Presenting all four texts similarly ‘as said’ would be a complex and less than fully satisfying undertaking.
Mr. Curry was asked to say a few words in Seneca, and this is what he immediately produced. It is interesting for its spontaneity, for its repetitions, and for the evidence it gave of matters that concerned him.

1 **Da:h ne’** dih neh ęgátsonyá:nö’: ę-k-at-hrory-a-hnö:-’
   FUT-1.SG.AGT-MID-tell-LK-DIST-PUN
so it is topic namely I’m going to tell about things
   *So I’m going to tell about things.*

2 **Ne’** neh hagyó’se:h neh hö:gweh.
   hak-yó’-’se:<h  h-ökweh
   M.SG.AGT/1.SG.PAT-arrive-BEN-STA  M.SG.AGT-person
it is namely he’s visiting me namely man
   *A man was visiting me.*

3 **Ne’** neh wá:ga:ödö’:
   wa’-hak-ahrö tô’-’
   FAC-M.SG.AGT/1.SG.PAT-ask-PUN 1.SG.AGT-plant-HAB
it is namely he asked me whether I plant
   *He asked me if I plant.*

4 **Da:h o:nëh** dwagwénitgéööh o’gi’.
   t-wak-wën- itkë’-ööh  o’-k-i’
   CIS-1.SG.PAT-word-emit-STA  FAC-1.SG.AGT-say-PUN
so then I’ve spoken out I said
   *So then I spoke out, I said.*

5 **Do:gës ne’hoh ná:h.**
   yes indeed that (emphasis)
   *Yes I do.*

6 Gyétwas naeh.
   k-ýethw-ahs
   1.SG.AGT-plant-HAB
I plant (emphasis)
   *I do plant.*

7 Ostö:shó’ööh.
   o-sthw-öö:sh=shö’öö  o-sthw-öö:sh=shö’öö
   N.SG.PAT-be.a.few-STA-NDIST  N.SG.PAT-be.a.few-STA-NDIST
a few different things
   *A few things.*

8 **Da:h ne’** wá:ga:ödö’:
   wa’-hak-ahrö tô’-’
   FAC-M.SG.AGT/1.SG.PAT-ask-PUN
so it is he asked me whatever things I plant
   *So he asked me what kind of things I plant.*
9 Da:h o:nëh o’gátšonyá:nö:’.
   o’-k-at-hrory-a-hnö:-’
   FAC-1.SG.AGT-MID-tell-LK-DIST-PUN
so then I told about them
So then I told about them.

10 O’gi’,
   o’-k-i’
   FAC-1.SG.AGT-say-PUN
I said
I said.

11 o’nöö’dä’ gye:h agyë:töh.
   o-nöö’t-a’ wak-yethw-öh
   N.SG.PAT-potatoes-NSF 1.SG.PAT-plant-STA
potatoes some I’ve planted
I’ve planted some potatoes.

12 Onë’ koh gye:h agyë:töh,
   o-nëh-a’ wak-yethw-öh
   N.SG.PAT-corn-NSF 1.SG.PAT-plant-STA
corn some I’ve planted
And I’ve planted some corn,

13 osa’e’dä’ koh gye:h.
   o-sahe’-t-a’
   N.SG.PAT-beans-NSF
beans some
and some beans.

14 Okdëa’shö’öh koh gye:h.
   o-ktehr-’ö-shö’öh
   N.SG.PAT-root-NSF-NDIST
roots some
And some roots.

15 O’ña’sa’ gye:h.
   o’-nä’s-a’
   N.SG.PAT-onions-NSF
onions some
Some onions.

16 O’gyáshönyö:’ na’ahdë’shö’öh agyë:töh.
   o’-k-yäs-hönyö:-’ na’ahte’-eh-shö’öh wak-yethw-öh
   FAC-1.SG.AGT-name-DIST-PUN thing-NDIST 1.SG.PAT-plant-STA
I named them things
I named the things I planted.

17 Da:h neh wá:ga:ödö:’
   wa’-hak-ahrötö:-’
   FAC-M.SG.AGT/1.SG.PAT-ask-PUN
so namely he asked me
So he asked me

18 ádi’gwah wiyóaje’.
   w-iyo-h-atye’
   N.SG.AGT-be.good-STA-PROG-STA
whether it’s doing well
if it’s doing well.
19 **Da:h o:nëh wáê:o:wi’,**
  
  wa’-he-hori-’
  
  FAC-1.SG.AGT/M.SG.PAT-tell-PUN
  
  so then I told him
  So then I told him,

20 **ne’hoh nö:h ha’delaye:i’,**
  
  ha’-te-ka-yeri-’
  
  TRANS-DUP-N.SG.AGT-be.proper-STA
  
  that I guess it’s enough
  Well enough I guess,

21 **nigaëdö’dë:h.**
  
  ni-ka-hët-o’të-:h
  
  PART-N.SG.AGT-garden-be.a.certain.way-STA
  
  how the garden is
  how the garden is.

22 **Nä:h de’we:so’ de’gyë:twas,**
  
  te’-w-eso-’
  
  NEG-N.SG.AGT-be.much-STA
  
  (emphasis) not much
  I don't plant much,

23 **da:h ne’ gwa:h neh ostō:shō’öh.**
  
  o-sthw-ö:h-shō’öh
  
  N.SG.PAT-be.a.few-STA-NDIST
  
  so it is but namely a few things
  but a few things.

24 **Da:h ne’hoh nö’jöknitä:wëh,**
  
  n-a’-t-yökni-hthar-a-wë-h
  
  PART-FAC-DUP.EX.DU.PAT-talk-LK-happen-PUN
  
  so that how we talked
  So that's how we happened to talk,

25 **në:h neh hō:gwëh hagyvé’së:h,**
  
  h-ökweh hak-yō’-se:-h
  
  M.SG.AGT-person M.SG.AGT/1.SG.PAT-arrive-BEN-STA
  
  this namely man he’s visiting me
  this man who was visiting me,

26 **hagöödö:nyöh ádi’gwëh gyë:twas.**
  
  hak-ahröö-nyö-h k-yëthw-ahs
  
  M.SG.AGT/1.SG.PAT-ask-DIST-HAB 1.SG.AGT-plant-HAB
  
  he’s asking me things whether I plant
  who was asking me things about whether I plant

27 **Adi’gwëh koh wiyóa’jë.**
  
  w-iyo-h-atye-’
  
  N.SG.AGT-be.good-STA-PROG-STA
  
  whether and it’s doing well
  And whether it's doing well.
28 Da:h wáéonyá:nö:'.
    wa'-he-hrory-a-hnö:-'
    FAC-1.SG.AGT/MSG.PAT-tell-LK-DIST-PUN
    so I told him
    So I told him.

29 Da:h ne'hoh në:geh niyóíwa',
    ni-yo-rihw-a-' PART-N.SG.PAT-matter-be.a.size-STA
    so that this the size of the matter
    So that's what there was to it,

30 hagáodö:'
    hak-ahrötö-ha’
    M.SG.AGT/1.SG.PAT-ask-HAB
    he's asking me
    he was asking me,

31 da:h ne'hoh näh shö:h koh niyóíwa'
    ni-yo-rihw-a-' PART-N.SG.PAT-matter-B.E.A.SIZE-STA
    so that (emphasis) just and the size of the matter
    and so that was just as much as

32 o'gátšonyá:nö:'.
    o’-k-at-hrory-a-hnö:-'
    FAC-1.SG.AGT-tell-LK-DIST-PUN
    I told about things
    I told about.

33 Da:h nehoh.
    so that
    So that's it.
Text 2. The Arrival of Spring
Excerpt from a conversation between Leland Hemlock and Stanley Huff
Recorded by Alberta Austin, Cattaraugus Reservation, March 12, 1991

   w-ēnhishr-iyō-h
   N.SG.AGT-day-be.good-STA
   it’s a nice day this this time
   It’s a nice day today.

2 S Mhm, ogwá:döh.
   o-kwałst-ēh
   N.SG.PAT-be.good.weather-STA
   mhm it’s nice weather
   Mhm, it’s nice weather.

3 L Ė:h. Awédetgë:de’.
   AW-ētetgarat-E’
   N.SG.PAT-be.pleasant-STA
   yes it’s pleasant
   Yes. It’s pleasant.

4 L Knigö:ē’ nā:h ēwôdi’no’t.
   k-niköhr-a-’
   I.SG.AGT-mind-LK-be.in-STA
   I’m anxious (emphasis) they will peep
   I’m anxious for the peepers to peep.

   ka-wēn-iyō-h
   N.SG.AGT-sound-be.good-STA
   it’s a nice sound repeatedly you will listen to it
   It’s always a nice sound when you listen to it.

6 S Ė:h, Ėdzo:hē’t nō:h nā:h shō:h,
   Ė-s-oy-rhē’-t
   FUT-REP-N.SG.PAT-become.day-PUN
   yes tomorrow again I guess (emphasis) just
   Yes, tomorrow again I guess,

7 S dëyógēhö:di’ nā:h dēgânö’e’t,
   t-ē-yō-gēnhōti-’
   DUP-FUT-N.SG.PAT-become.mild-PUN
   it will become mild (emphasis) it will be liked
   there will be welcomed mild weather,

8 S Ėshëndzö’ya’kë.
   Ė-s-hën-its-o’ hak-h-h’a’
   FUT-REP-M.PL.AGT-fish-throw-AND-PUN
   they’ll go fishing again
   they’ll go fishing again.
9 L Ge:gëh gë:s ga’séhdágëdö’ hó:öweh,
ke-kë-h ka’seht-a-kehüt-ö’-
1.SG.AGT-see-HAB N.SG.AGT-car-LK-lay.down-DIST-STA
I see it repeatedly cars parked over there
I keep seeing cars parked over there,

10 L onôdagó:gwah.
o-nöt-akö:h=kwa:h
N.SG.PAT-hill-INT.LOC-TOWARD
below the hill.
below the hill.

11 L Adi’gwah nā:h gwah,
whether (emphasis) but
But whether,

12 L ga:o’ nèdwë:ne’ neh,
n-ë-t-wën-en’
PART-FUT-NONM.PLAGT-come-PUN
this way how they will come namely when they come this way,

13 L de’ónesdo:h neh lake ahsöh.
te’-yo-nehsto:’
NEG-N.SG.PAT-be.frozen-STA
it isn’t frozen namely lake still
the lake isn’t still frozen.

14 S Gwisë’ dih nā:h hadiye:nö:s?
hati- yenö
M.PLAGT-catch-HAB
something (topic shift) (emphasis) they catch it
Do they catch anything?

15 S Onenöje’ o:nëh negë’.
o-nena-tye’
N.SG.PAT-be.warm-prog-STA
it’s getting warm now specifically
It's getting warm now.

16 S Ö:dawënödâwë:ën,
gë:s wa:ëni’,
ö:-t-wën-at-awëhët-0
HYP-CIS-HYP-NONM.PLAGT-MID-go.up-PUN
they might come up repeatedly they say
They might come up, they always say,

17 S ga:nyö’ gedzöh.
when fish
when there are fish.
18 S Dëyógëhö:di’ o:nëh.
t-ë-yo-kënhöti’
DUP-FUT-N.SG.PAT-become.mild-PUN
it will become mild now
*It will become mild now.*

19 S Ha’de:yö:h ëswödoja:k.
ha’-te-y-o:-h ë-s-w-at-otyak-0
TRANS-DUP-N.SG.AGT-be.an.amount-STA FUT-REP-N.SG.AGT-mature-PUN
everything it will mature again
*Everything will grow again.*

20 L We:so’ gë:s hënìdzö’ya:s ónëhjih wáyë:’.
w-eso’ hën-its-o’yak-s
N.SG.AGT-much-STA M.PL.AGT-fish-throw-HAB
a lot repeatedly they fish long ago isn’t it
*They fished a lot in the old days didn’t they.*

21 L Gwas de’, gwas nà:h, a:yë’ gë:s a:h,
very (neg) very (emphasis) it seems repeatedly ah
*Wasn’t it, a lot, it seems,*

22 S tsihsögwe’dà:se:’.
tsi-hs-öke’t-ase:-’
COIN-2.SG.AGT-person-young-STA
when you were young
*when you were young.*

23 L Ė:h, ëwóknö:’s nà:h o:nëh.
ë-wak-nörü’-s-0
FUT-1.SG.PAT-be.difficult-BEN-PUN
yes I’ll get lazy (emphasis) now
*Yes, I’m getting lazy now.*

24 L O’gátgehjis nö:h nà:h o:nëh.
o’-k-at-këhtsi-hst-0
FAC-1.SG.AGT-be.old-CAUS-PUN
I got old I guess (emphasis) now
*I guess I got old now.*

25 S Mm, háé’gwah.
mm also
Mm, me too.

26 L Knöe’s gwa:h nà:h,
k-nöhe’-s
1.SG.AGT-like-HAB
I like it but (emphasis)
*But I like it,*

175
27 L gehøgosh’  egegawénye’ha’.
   ka-iyh-akö-shö’  ě-k-at-awén-ye’-h-a’
N.SG.AGT-creek-INT.LOC-THOROUGH  FUT-1.SG.AGT-MID-stir-AND-PUN
all along the creek  I will go walking

to go walking all along the creek.

28 S Mhm, koh awédetgä:de’.
aw-ëtëtkarat-e’
N.SG.PAT-be.pleasant-STA
mhm and it’s pleasant
and it’s pleasant.

k-ëtkwit-ha’  o’-k-è-nöt-anëht-0
1.SG.AGT-feel.well-HAB  FAC-1.SG.AGT-hill-descend-PUN
I’m feeling well when I go down the hill repeatedly
I’m feeling well whenever I go down the hill.

30 L Irvin gye:h o’jáknyadä’t,
o’-t-yakny-atra’-t
FAC-DUP-EX.DU.AGT-come.together-PUN
Irvin some we met
I met Irvin once.

31 L hëdzö’yas.
   ha-its-o’ yak-s  yes
M.SG.AGT-fish-throw-HAB  Yes?
he’s fishing
he was fishing.

32 S Ë:h?  yes

33 L Ë:h nekoh, onödagö:h.
o-nöt-akö:h
N.SG.PAT-hill-int.LOC
yes here at the bottom of the hill
Yes here, at the bottom of the hill.

34 S Hë:nödësnëta’?  yes
he-h-ë-nöt-asnëht-ha’
TRANS-M.SG.AGT-MID-hill-go.down-HAB
he goes down the hill there
Does he go down the hill there?

35 L Wa:gadëyogwáhdë’.
   wa’-hak-atëyokwahnt-è’
FAC-M.SG.AGT/1.SG.PAT-startle-PUN
he startled me
He startled me.
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

36 L O’gaʃeːgwah shō:h neːʻ,
o’-k-atyërēkw-ah
FAC-1.SG.AGT-realize-PUN
I became suddenly aware just it is
_I suddenly realized_,

37 L o’jákṉyadă’t.
o’-t-yaky-atra’-t
FAC-DUP-EX.DU.AGT-come.together-PUN
we met
_who I met_.

38 L Gweːgoː deːegɛːʼ.
te’-hê-kêːʼ
NEG-1.SG.AGT/M.SG.PAT-see-NEG.PAST
not even I didn’t see him
_I didn’t even see him_.

39 L Agátaːine’ shō:h,
wak-at-hah-ine’
1.SG.PAT-MID-road-proceed-STA
I was walking just
_I was just walking_.

40 L O’gaʃeːgwah shō:h,
o’-k-atyërēkw-ah
FAC-1.SG.AGT-realize-PUN
I became suddenly aware just Irving (emphasis) he’s standing around
_I suddenly realized_

41 L Irvin nāːh hadaːje’s.
ha-t-atye-’s
M.SG.AGT-stand-PROG-HAB
Irvin (emphasis) he’s standing around
_Irvin was standing there_.

42 L O’jákṉyadă’t.
o’-t-yaky-atra’-t
FAC-DUP-EX.DU.AGT-come.together-PUN
we met
_We met_.

43 Hēdzo’yaːs hâe’gwah.
ha-its-o’yak-s
M.SG.AGT-fish-throw-HAB
he’s fishing also
_He was fishing too_.

177
44 S Waëńōda:snën  gë:s  hi:gë:h.
FAC-M.SG.AGT-MID-go.down-PUN
he goes down the hill repeatedly this
He always goes down the hill.

45 S De'shóió’de’  hae’gwah.
NEG-M.SG.PAT-be.working-STA
he’s not working anymore also
He's not working anymore either.

46 S Hodőishē’  há’égwah  né:ne’.
M.SG.PAT-rest-STA
he’s resting also that one
He's retired too.

47 S Waëńōda:snën  é’:  gë:s,
FAC-M.SG.AGT-MID-hill-go.down-PUN
he goes down the hill in fact repeatedly
He always goes down the hill,

FUT-M.SG.AGT-feel.well-HAB-CONT
he will be feeling well when he is thinking
just namely he will be feeling well
just when he thinks he's feeling well.

49 S O’tadawēnye’ha’,
FAC-DUP-M.SG.AGT-move-AND-PUN
he went for a walk
He went for a walk,

50 S gë’högöshō’  gë:s  wa:e’.
N.SG.AGT-creek-EXT.LOC-THOROUGH-FAC-M.SG.AGT-go-PUN
all along the creek repeatedly
he went along the creek.

51 L Ne’  näh  i’,
it is (emphasis) I
I will too,

52 L ga:nyo’  ēsganenō:nyö:’  ostö:h.
FUT-REP-N.SG.AGT-be.warm-DIST-PUN
as soon as it will warm up again
as soon as it warms up again a little.

53 L  

53 L Virgil nā:h wa’jih wā:at,  
 wa’-ha-hraht-0 FAC-M.SG.AGT-pass.by-PUN  
 (name) (emphasis) recently he went by  
 Did Virgil go by a while ago,

54 L nekoh wā:at?  
 wa’-ha-hraht-0 FAC-M.SG.AGT-pass.by-PUN  
 here he went by  
 did he go by here?

55 S Ė:h.  
 yes  
 Yes.

56 S Háéo’dë:ōwi’ nā:h.  
 ha-heho’t-ēhawi-’ M.SG.AGT-gun-carry-STA  
 he’s carrying a gun (emphasis)  
 He was carrying a gun.

57 L O:h.  
 oh  
 Oh.

58 S Wa:dowā:te’ nō:h gwisdē’.  
 wa’-ha-atorat-e’ FAC-M.SG.AGT-hunt-PURP  
 he’s going to hunt it I guess something  
 I guess he’s going to hunt something.

59 L O:h.  
 oh  
 Oh.

60 S Ganō:ge’ nō:h nā:h koh ahsōh,  
 ka-nakre-’ N.SG.AGT-be.many-STA  
 there are many I guess (emphasis) and still  
 And I guess there's still a lot of them,

61 S gwa’yō:’.  
 kwa’yōh-a’ rabbit-NSF  
 rabbit  
 rabbits.

62 S Di’gwah gwa:h na’ot.  
 whatever but what kind  
 Or whatever.

63 L Gwa’yō’’ ē:h ganō:ge’.  
 kwa’yōh-a’ ka-nakre-’ N.SG.AGT-be.many-NSF  
 rabbit yes there are many  
 Yes there are a lot of rabbits.

64 S Ė:h.  
 yes  
 Yes.

65 L Virg nō:h ni’:i:wi:h hojīyä’shō’,  
 ho-tsir-a’-shō’ M.SG.PAT-dog-NDIST  
 (name) I guess I think his dogs  
 I think Virg's dogs,
66 L beagle  honôsgwayë’?  
ho-naskw-a-yë’
M.SG.PAT-pet-LK-have-STA  
(English) he has a pet
does he have a beagle?

67 S Do:gës  nö:h  ni’:  i:wi:h.  
it’s true  I guess  I  I think
I think so.

68 L Da:h  ne’  hi:gë:h  nekó:gwah  
neko-kwa:h  
here-TOWARD  
so it is these toward here
So they’re the ones who around here

69 L gë:s  wënödo:wä:s.  
wën-atorat-s  
N.PL.AGT-hunt-HAB  
repeatedly they hunt
they’re always hunting.

70 L Gee,  
(English)  
Gee,

71 L ga:ögwa:h  nö:h  nigëjohgwa’  ë:h,  
ni-ityohk-wa’  
PART-crowd-NSF  
very big I guess how big a crowd yes
I guess it was a really big bunch,

72 L ji:yäh  né:wa’.  
dog this time
of dogs this time.

73 L Hadishe’s  nö:h  gwa’yô:’.  
hati-hshe-’s  
rabbit-NSF  
they’re chasing it  I guess rabbit
I guess they were chasing a rabbit.

74 L Nekógwa:h  nö:h  o’wado:gé:n.  
neko-KWA:H  
o’w-atokëht-0  
here-TOWARD  
FAC-N.SG.AGT-go.straight-PUN  
toward here (emphasis)  it went straight
It came straight toward here.

75 S Otší:wä:k?  
o-tshi’war-ahk  
N.SG.PAT-be.interesting.to watch.STA.PAST
it was interesting to watch
Was it interesting to watch?

76 L Ê:h.  
yes
Yes.

77 L Oja:nøn  së’ëh  nö:h.  
o-ayah-haht-0  
N.SG.PAT-be.comical-STA
it’s comical because (emphasis)
Because it’s comical.

78 S Ê:h.  
yes
Yes.
79 S De’sganöge’  hi:gë:h  na’ot  dë’ëh.
te’-s-ka-nakre-’
NEG-REP.N.SG.AGT-be.plentiful-STA
it isn’t plentiful  that  that kind  what

That sort of thing isn’t common anymore.

80 S De’shadiye:ha’  hi:gë:h  jiya’shö’oh.
te’-s-hati-yer-ha’  tsira-’shö’oh
NEG-REP.M.PL.AGT-do-HAB  dog-NDIST
you don’t do it anymore  that  dogs

They don’t do it anymore with dogs.

81 L Beagles  gë:s  hanö’e’s  hi:gë:h  wayë’.

(English) repeatedly  he likes it  that  isn’t it

He likes beagles doesn’t he.

82 S É:h.  83 SH Dewáöhdë:s  ne’  gaya:söeh  hi:gë:h.
yes  te-w-ahöht-es-0  ka-yas-öh
Yes.  DUP.N.SG.AGT-ear-long-STA  N.SG.AGT-called-STA

It’s called long ears.

84 L Dewáöhdë:s?
te-w-ahöht-es-0
DUP.N.SG.AGT-ear-long-STA
long ears

Long ears?

85 S Dewáöhdë:s  gë:s  hadiyasta’  neh  hound
te-w-ahöht-es-0  hati-ya-st-ha’
DUP.N.SG.AGT-ear-long-STA  M.PL.AGT-call-HAB

They call a hound dog long ears.

86 S Awëdetgä:idë’  së’ëh  dösayogëhö:di’  o:nëh.
aw-ëtëkarat-e’  t-ö-s-a-yo-kënhöti-’
N.SG.PAT-be.pleasant-STA  CIS-FAC-REP-FAC-N.SG.pat-summer-PUN
it’s pleasant  because  it’s summer again  now

It’s pleasant because it’s summer again now.

87 S Jigos nä:h  shö:h  ae’  ëswödi:no’t  koh.
ë-s-wati-’no’-t
FUT-REP.N.PL.AGT-peep-PUN

soon  (emphasis) just again  they’ll peep  and

And pretty soon the peepers will peep again.

88 S Gë’  gë:s  o:nëh  gåí’sdë:yo:h  hi:gë:h,
ka-ri’st-iyo:h  that
N.SG.AGT-sound-nice-STA
really  repeated now  it’s a nice sound  that

Really now that’s always a nice sound,
89 S ëhsádi:wátö:da:t  ae'.
FUT-2.SG.AGT-topic-listen.to-LK-CAUS-PUN
you will listen to it again
for you to listen to again.

90 L Do:gës ná:h.  it's true  (emphasis)
That's right.

91 L Hö:ga:k koh gë:s  o'wádiá:ts
FAC-N.PL.AGT-go.by-PUN
geese and repeatedly they pass by
And geese keep going by.

92 S Mm.  mm
Mm.

93 S Hö:ga:k koh gë:s  o'gâ:s'ah  sádiá:ts
FAC-N.PL.AGT-get.dark-HAB-DIM
geese and repeatedly in the evening
And geese go by again in the evening.

94 S Gë:s  sawádiá:ts.
FAC-N.PL.AGT-go.by-PUN
repeatedly they go by again (females)
They go by again.

95 S Awëdetgä:de'.
aw-ëtetkarat-e'
N.SG.PAT-be.pleasant-STA
it’s pleasant
It's pleasant.

96 L Awëdetgä:de' ná:h  ahsöh  söhe'.
as-a-watti-hraht-0
REP-FAC-N.PL.AGT-go.by-PUN
it’s pleasant (emphasis) still you’re alive
It's pleasant you're still alive.

97 S Ë:h.  yes
Yes.

98 S Ahsöh  dewagadawënye:h  yöédza'geh.
te-wak-at-awënye:-h
DUP-1.SG.PAT-MID-stir-STA
still I'm moving about on the earth
I'm still walking around on the earth.

99 S Ne:' gë:s  wa:ëni'  hi:gë:h  neh,
wà-hëni-'
FAC-M.PL.AGT-say-PUN
it is repeatedly they say that namely
That's what they always say,

100 S deyögwę:hsi'dágé'sáhgöh  gyö'öh  gë:s,
te-yök-wë-ë-ahi't-a-ke'srahk-öh
DUP-EX.PL.PAT-MID-foot-LK-provide.support-STA
it supports our feet hearsay repeatedly
it supports our feet,

101 S Mother Earth  i:gë:h.
(English) which is Mother Earth.
Whenever I hear it,

Gee something always happens,

I don’t know why.

You went through another year, that’s what it is.

That’s when the winter season ended again.
Text 3. The First False Face
Told by Solon Jones
Recorded at Newtown on the Cattaraugus Reservation, May 7, 1957

1 Da:h o:nëh ēgā tônyá:nö:,
   e-k-athrory-a-hnö:-’
FUT-1.SG.AGT-tell.about-LK-DIST-PUN
so now I will tell about things
So now I will tell about things,

2 heh nijáwësdáhgöh,
   ni-t-yaw-ē-st-a-hk-öh
PART-CIS-N.SG.PAT-happen-CAUS-LK-INST-STA
how it happened
how it happened,

3 shagojowéhgo:wa:h,
   shako-atyowe-h-kowa:h
M.SG.AGT/3.PAT-defend-HAB-AUG
the great defender
the false face,

4 ne’hoh négë:h odadö:nih,
   o-atat-ōni:h
N.SG.PAT-REFL-make-STA
there this it has made itself
that it came into being,

5 hē:ôweh yeyá’dade’
   ye-ya’t-a-te’
F.SG.AGT-body-LK-be.present-STA
where they are there namely people
among the people.

6 Ne’ neh hö:gweh,
   h-ökweh
M.SG.AGT-person
it is namely a man
There was a man,

7 ne’hoh do:dawénye:aje’
   te-ho-atawény-h-atyé’e’
DUP-M.SG.PAT-stir-STA-PROG-STA
there he is moving about
he was going about hunting,

8 gahadagō:shō’.
   ka-rhat-akō-shō’
N.SG.AGT-woods-INT.LOC-THROUGHOUT
throughout the woods
through the woods.

9 Da:h ne’hoh nō’ö:wēh
   n-a’-yaw-ēh-0
PART-FAC-N.SG.PAT-happen-PUN
so there it happened
So there he heard it,
10  wa’ósdōwé’säga:eh.
    wa’-yo-stawé’sr-a-kar-eh
    FAC-N.SG.PAT-rattle-LK-make.a.noise-PUN
    the sound of a rattle
    the sound of a rattle.

11  Da:h  o:nëh  o’ta:da’t            wa: dáóhdi:yo:s.
    o’-t-ha-ta’-t
    FAC-DUP-M.SG.AGT-stand-PUN
    So then he stood
    he listened carefully
    So then he stopped and listened carefully.

    wa’-ha-ahrök-a’-t-0
    FAC-M.SG.AGT-hear-LK-CAUS-PUN
    there he heard it
    toward there where he came from
    He heard it from the direction he came from.

13  Da:h  o:nëh  sá:he:gt,            sa’niyo:we’
    s-a-ahket-0
    REP-FAC-come.back-PUN
    so then he went back
    after a little way he stopped again,
    And so he turned back,

14  sa’  niyo:we’              ha’dósa:da’t.
    ni-yo-re’
    PART-N.SG.PAT-distance-STA
    a little way how far he stood again
    after a little way he stopped again,
    TRANS-DUP-FAC-REP-FAC-stand-PUN

15  o:nëh  ae’ sa: dáóhdi:yi:yo:s.
    s-a-ha-at-aböht-iyö-hst-0
    REP-FAC-M.SG.AGT-MID-ear-good-CAUS-PUN
    then again he listened carefully again
    he listened carefully again.

16  Ne’hó:gwá:h  sá:øga’t.
    ne’hoh-kwa’h s-a-ha-ahrök-a’-t-0
    REP-FAC-M.SG.AGT-hear-LK-CAUS-PUN
    toward there he heard it again
    He heard it again from there,

17  hé:gwá:h  no’dóda:e’.
    heh-kwa’h  na’-t-ö-t-a-h-e’
    toward there  PART-DUP-FAC-CIS-FAC-M.SG.AGT-go-PUN
    toward there where he came from
    from the direction he had come from.
18 Da:h ne’hoh okji’geot,  
o-ktsi’gar-ot-0  
N.SG.PAT-stump-be.upright-STA  
so there a stump was there  
*And there there was a stump,*

19 deyóswë:de’,  
te-yo-swëte-’  
DUP-N.SG.PAT-hollow-STA  
it was hollow  
*it was hollow,*

20 ne’hoh wa:atis,  
wa’-ha-athihst-0  
FAC-M.SG.AGT-move-PUN  
there he moved  
*he went up to it,*

21 nō’gō:h wá:tgato’,  
wa’-ha-atkatho-’  
FAC-M.SG.AGT-look-PUN  
inside he looked  
*he looked inside,*

22 da:h ne’hoh wa:agë’,  
wa’-ha-kē-’  
FAC-M.SG.AGT-see-PUN  
so there he saw it  
*and there he saw it,*

23 wa:ogë’ i:at  
wå-ho-kē-’ i-ha-t-0  
FAC-M.SG.PAT-see-PUN PRO-M.SG.AGT-stand-STA  
he saw him he’s standing  
*he saw a tiny man standing,*

24 shagojowéhgo:wa:h,  
shako-atyowe-h-kowa:h  
M.SG.AGT/3.PAT-defend-HAB-AUG  
the great defender  
*the false face,*

25 tgaye:i’  
t-ka-yeri-’  
CIS-N.SG.AGT-be.right-STA  
in fact he was holding a turtle rattle,  
*he was holding a turtle rattle,*

26 tagósgha:t,  
t-ka-kōhs-karhat-0  
CIS-M.SG.AGT-face-turn-STA  
he’s looking up  
*he was looking up,*

27 ne:’ koh neh tgaye:i’  
t-ka-yeri-’  
CIS-N.SG.AGT-be.right-STA  
it is and namely really  
*and he was actually talking,*

28 hota:’,  
ho-hthar-’  
M.SG.PAT-talk-STA  
he’s talking
28 gagóh'sa' nigawénó'dë:h.
   ka-kóh's-a' ni-ka-wé:n-o'të:-h
 N.SG.AGT-face-NSF PART-N.SG.AGT-voice-be.so-STA
 face how its voice is
 the way a false face talks.

29 Da:h ne'hoh në:gë:h sá:hdé:dí',
   s-a-ha-ah'të:-i'
 REP-FAC-M.SG.AGT-go-PUN
 so there this one he went back
 So he went back,

30 dosgëh shö:h heawe:nö:h,
   he-haw-en-ö:h
 TRANS-M.SG.PAT-go.somewhere-STA
 near just he has gone there
 he had gone just a little way,

31 o:nëh wá:ga'ë:yö:'
   wa'-ha-ka'ëyö:'
 FAC-M.SG.AGT-N.SG.AGT-notice-PUN
 then he noticed it
 when he noticed,

32 gatgá'hoh dagáiwadiyö:dë'.
   t-a-ka-rihw-a-tiyö'-ë'
 CIS-FAC-N.SG.AGT-thing-LK-stretch-PUN
 somewhere it caused distress
 something was wrong with him.

33 Dayótgë'ô:je' shö:h.
   t-a-yo-itrë'-ôh-atye'-ë'
 CIS-FAC-N.SG.PAT-get.worse-STA-PROG-PUN
 it was getting worse just
 It was just getting worse.

34 Da:h o:nëh ne'hoh hesho:yö:h,
   he-s-ho-yö:-h
 TRANS-REP-M.SG.PAT-arrive-STA
 so then there he’s arrived back
 And so then he got back,

35 hë:öweh në:gë:h nitë'jòda:je's,
   ni-t-ha-i'atrë-atye'-ë's
 PART-CIS-M.SG.AGT-stay-PROG-HAB
 where this one where he’s staying
 where he was staying,
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

36 neʼ neh jodéʼhasdöʼ hoʼdóhgóʼéeh.
t-yo-ate-ʼhast-ô-ʼ ho-ʼtöhkörëh-ôh
CIS-N.SG.PAT-MID-strong-DIST-STA M.SG.PAT-have.a.fever-STA
it is namely it is strong
he has a fever.

37 Neʼ koh neh t gwêhdäʼ:ʼë:ʼ náyaʼdóʼdë:h.
tkwëhtar-a-ʼë:ʼ ni-ha-yaʼt-o ʼtê-:h
blood-LK-color.of PART-M.SG.AGT-body.so-STA
it is and namely red
how his body is
And his body was red.

38 Hëʼëh daʼáöh gwisdëʼ ná:di:ye:ʼ
n-aa-hati-yr-ʼ PART-HYP-M.PL.AGT-do-PUN
no it’s impossible something they did it
They couldn’t do anything

39 naówóyaʼdágehâʼ.
n-aa-hówa-yaʼ-t-akenh-aʼ PART-HYP-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-body-LK-help-PUN
they would help him
to help him.

40 Da:h neʼhoh waʼa:wëh waʼ-yaw-ëh-0
FAC-N.SG.PAT-happen-PUN
so there it happened
So it happened

41 oʼgagwe:niʼ wá:tšonyá:nö:ʼ
oʼ-ka-kweniʼ-ʼ waʼ-ha-athröy-a-hnö-:ʼ
FAC-N.SG.AGT-be.possible-PUN FAC-M.SG.AGT-tell.about-LK-dist-PUN
it was possible he told about things
he was able to tell

42 nè:dah niyóʼdë:h wá:tgatoʼ.
ni-y-oʼtë-:h waʼ-ha-atkatho-ʼ
PART-N.SG.AGT-what.kind-STA FAC-M.SG.AGT-observe-PUN
here what kind
he observed it
the kind of things he saw.

43 Da:h o:nëh wá:dihšö:niʼ gagóhsaʼ,
wáʼ-hati-hsröniʼ-ʼ ka-köhs-aʼ
FAC-M.PL.AGT-make-PUN N.SG.AGT-face-NSF
so then they made it face
So they made a face,
44 o’tadiyëđa:ak nē:ɡē:h
o’-t-hati-yerōtar-a-hk-0
FAC-DUP-M.PL.AGT-resembe-LK-INST-PUN
they made it resemble it
this
they made it resemble this

45 wá:tšo:wi’ heh nıɡáya’dó’dë:h.
wá’-ha-athrori-’
FAC-M.SG.AGT-tell.about-PUN
he told about it
there
the way it was
the shape he told about.

46 Da:h tgayei’ nē:ɡē: wa:diyé’gwahso:nyet,
:ž h t-ka-yeri-’
CIS-N.SG.AGT-be.right-STA
so
indeed
this
they burned tobacco for it
So they burned tobacco for it,

47 wa’enôdôišök
wa’-hēn-at-ōhisyōhk-0
FAC-M.PL.AGT-MID-persist-PUN
they prayed
they prayed

48 neh ne’hoh ɪ:ɡē:h sgē:nö’ hō:saya:wëh,
s-ka-inö-’
REP-N.SG.AGT-well-STA
namely that who
well-being
it would happen
that he would get well again,

49 nē:ɡē:h heh nìyò’dë:h dagáiwiyö:dë’.
ni-y-o’tē:h
PART-N.SG.AGT-be.so-STA
this where
how it is
it caused him distress
from what was wrong with him.

50 Da:h do:gës ne’hoh nō’o:wëh,
n-a’-yaw-ëh-0
PART-FAC-N.SG.PAT-happen-PUN
so
indeed
that
it happened
So indeed that did happen,

51 sgē:nö’ hō:saya:wëh,
h-ōō-s-a-yaw-ëh-0
TRANS-HYP-REP-HYP-N.SG.PAT-happen-PUN
well-being
it should happen again
that things improved again,
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

52 da:h ne’ koh neh tgage:i’,
    t-ka-yeri’
    CIS-N.SG.AGT-be.right-STA

so it is and namely in fact

and so in fact,

53 sa’ niyoweje’
    ni-yo-re-tye’-
    PART-N.SG.PAT-how.far-PROG-STA
little way how far along it is
every so often

54 o:nëh háiōgoto’,
    ha-rihokoht-ha’
    M.SG.AGT-perform.one’s.obligation-HAB
then he performs his obligation
he performs his ceremony,

55 në:dah na’ot shagojowéhgo:wa:h do:gë:h,
    shako-atyowe-h-kowa:h
    M.SG.AGT/3.PAT-defend-HAB-AUG
here this kind the great defender together
together with this false face,

56 tgage:i’ në:gë:h wáowö’géosäh,
    t-ka-yeri’ wa’-höwa-a’këhr-osrah-0
    CIS-N.SG.AGT-be.right-STA FAC-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-ashes-sprinkle-PUN
in fact this they sprinkled ashes on him

and they sprinkled ashes on him,

57 tgage:i’ koh
    t-ka-yeri’
    CIS-N.SG.AGT-be.right-STA
in fact and

and in fact

58 o’wadëēnôhdë:di’ neh hoënö’,
    o’-w-atrënahtëti’
    FAC-N.SG.AGT-song.go.on-PUN M.SG.PAT-song-NSF
his song went on namely his song

his song went on,

59 a:hö’ shö:h dawë:nöhdö’
    t-a:w-enëhtö’-
    CIS-FAC-N.SG.AGT-in.control-PUN
itself just it forced it namely song

the song just came out by itself,
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

60 nê: dah neh nigaënö’dë:h,
   ni-ka-rèn-o’të:-h
PART-N.SG.AGT-song-be.so-STA
this namely how the song is

61 o’wádë:wáhdë:di’
   o’-w-at-rihwa-ahti’-
FAC-N.SG.AGT-MID-thing-go-PUN
the thing went
it went on

62 hë’ëh sö:ga:’ de’tónöhdö’
   te’-t-ho-ênöhtö’-
NEG-CIS-M.SG.PAT-know-STA
no someone they don’t know it
no one knew it

63 sî:gwa:h nö’wö:dih.
   n-a’-w-ati-h
PART-FAC-N.SG.AGT-other.side-PUN
over there on which side
before.

64 Da:h në:gë:h niyö:we’ o’kdá’öh.
   ni-yo-re’
PART-N.SG.PAT-be.so.far-STA
   y-o’kta’-öh
N.SG.AGT-come.to.the.end-STA
so this how far it is it has come to the end
And so up to this time.

65 Ne’hoh niyö’dë:h,
   ni-o’të:-h
PART-N.SG.AGT-be.so-STA
that how it is
That’s how it is,

66 ne’ gayá’dagëhashä’  eyagodö:’s,
   ka-ya’takenh-a-hshar-a’  ē-yako-atöha’s’-0
N.SG.AGT-help-LK-nom-NSF  FUT-F.SG.PAT-become.for-PUN
it is help it will become to people
it will become a help to people,

67 só:di’gwah na’ot në:gë:h  ētgaiwadiyö:dë’,
   sō:-ti’gwah  ē-t-ka-rihwa-a-tiyöt-ē’
who-ever FUT-CIS-N.SG.AGT-topic-LK-stretch-PUN
whoever what kind this it will cause distress
whoever is in distress,
68  we:so’ në:gë:h  oyédeté’öh,
   o-yëtethe’-öh
   N.SG.PAT-become.apparent-STA
   much this it has become apparent
   as has appeared often,

69  ne’ ogwe:nyö:h  ēshagodiya’dágeh’a,
   o-kweny-ö:h  ē-shakoti-ya’takenh-a’
   N.SG.PAT-be.able-STA  FUT.3.NONSG.AGT/FEM.SG.PAT-help-PUN
it is it is possible they will help them
they will be able to help them,

70  neh  shagojégo:wa:h.
   shakó-atyowe-h-kowa:h
   M.SG.AGT/3.PAT-defend-HAB-AUG
   namely false face
   the false faces.

71 Da:h o:nêh waih no:nêh gayé’gôtwëh,
ka-yé’kwôthw-ëh
N.SG.AGT-tobacco-burn-STA
so then indeed when tobacco is burned
So when tobacco is burned,

72  da:h  ne’ koh hâ:’gwah  neh  tgaye:i’,
t-ka-yeri-’
CIS-N.SG.AGT-be.right-STA
so it is and also namely in fact
and so also in fact,

73  ne’hoh  hêyowénôwisat,
h-ë-yo-wên-awisâht-0
TRANS-FUT-N.SG.PAT-word-touch.glancingly-PUN
that it will mention it there
it will be mentioned there,

74  waodiyé’gwahsô:wi’,
wa’-hoti-yë’kw-a-hsöri-’
FAC-M.PL.PAT-tobacco-LK-savor-PUN
they smell the tobacco
they smell the tobacco,

75  neh  gâédi’gwah  nä:h  niyo:we’
i-ya-re-’
PART-N.SG.PAT-how.far-STA
namely wherever (emphasis) how far it is
however far it is
76 **nigéːöje’**  
part-ka-rö-h-atyet-’  
PART-N.SG.AGT-things.be.in-STA where it is  
in different lands,

**odőédzajëønyö’,**  
o-at-öhwëts-a-te-höñyö-’  
N.SG.PAT-land-LK-be.present-DIST-STA different lands

77 **daːh onëh gwås nèːgëːh**  
so then very much this  
so then this

78 **neː’ ne’hoːh toďawîdhahgöh,**  
t-hoti-hawihtahk-öh  
CIS-M.PL.PAT-bring.about-STA it is there they have brought it about  
where they brought it about,

**ga’hásdëshā’,**  
ka’-haste-hshr-a’  
N.SG.AGT-be.strong-NOM-NSF namely power  
the power.

79 **neː’ néːh neh doːdinó’goː’**  
te’-hoti-na’kör-’  
NEG-M.PL.PAT-be.vulnerable-STA it is this namely they can do anything  
*(emphasis)* they can do anything,

**nāːh,**  
N.SG.AGT-be.strong-NSF  
the power.

80 **neː’ néːh neh doːdinó’goː’**  
*te’-hoti-na’kör-’*  
NEG-M.PL.PAT-be.vulnerable-STA it is this namely they can do anything  
*(emphasis)* they can do anything,

**negwas**  
shagojowëhgoːwaːh,  
M.SG.AGT/3.PAT-defend-HAB-AUG they might be around very false face

81 **áënë’seːk**  
aa-hën-e’-s-ek  
HYP-M.PL.AGT-go-STA.DIST-CONT they might be around very false face

**nëːh**  
shagojowëhgoːwaːh,  
M.SG.AGT/3.PAT-defend-HAB-AUG very false face

82 **nëːh**  
shagojowëhgoːwaːh,  
M.SG.AGT/3.PAT-defend-HAB-AUG very false face

83 **niënö’sàːh.**  
i-hën-a’s’ahah-0  
PART-M.SG.AGT-small.ones-STA little ones  
the little ones

84 **Daːh neː’ gwåːh neh desgayëòdãːhgoːh,**  
te-s-ka-yërōtar-a-hk-öh  
DUP-CIS-N.SG.AGT-resemble-LK-INST-STA so it is but namely it’s made to resemble it  
so it’s made to resemble it closely,
85 ogwényös’oh,  
o-kweny-ö-hs’-öh  
N.SG.PAT-be.able-STA-EVEN-STA  
it eventually succeeded  
*it eventually succeeded,*

86 ne’hoh todíyó’dáhgoh,  
t-hoti-yö’tahk-öh  
CIS-M.PL.PAT-arrive.by.means.of-STA  
there they arrived with it  
*they came with it,*

87 ga’hásdesk’a’  
ka-’haste-hshr-öa’  
N.SG.AGT-be.strong-NOM-NSF  
power  
*they got enough power,*

88 nê:gé:h nê:wa’ neh  
shagojowégo:wa:h,  
shako-atyowe-h-kowa:h  
M.SG.PAT:3.PAT-defend-HAB-AUG  
false face

89 ne’hoh ögwé:neh,  
ôkweh-neh  
M.PL.PAT-where.person-EXT.LOC  
there where people are  
among the people,

90 gagéöda:je’  
ka-kehöt-atye-öa’  
N.SG.AGT-lay.down-PROG-STA  
it’s laid down all along  
it’s made

91 o:we’gá’  
o-hwe’kar-a’  
N.SG.PAT-wood-NSF  
wood  
wood is used for it

92 ne:’ neh tgaye:i’  
hodiyé’gwáhsönye:hdöh,  
t-ka-yeri-öa’  
CIS-N.SG.AGT-be.right-STA  
it is namely indeed  
indeed they’ve given it the scent of tobacco,
93 o:nëh ga’hásheshä’  odö’öh.
   ka’haste-hshr-a’  o-atö’-öh
   N.SG.AGT-be.strong-nom N.SG.PAT-become-STA
now  power  it has become
now it has become powerful.

94 Ogwe:nyö:h  ëshagoyá’dage:ha’  neh  ö:kweh,
o-kweny-ö:h  ë-shako-ya’takenh-a’
N.SG.PAT-be.able-STA  FUT-M.SG.AGT/3.PAT-help-PUN
it is possible  he will help them  namely people
He will be able to help people,

95 ga:nyo’  hë:öweh  gwisdë’  në:gë:h  ëtgáiwadiiy:dë’,
   ë-t-ka-ríhw-a-tiyot-ë’
FUT-CIS-N.SG.AGT-topic-LK-stretch-PUN
when  where  something  this  it will cause distress
when something causes distress,

96 ts’a’dë:wôn,
tsha’-t-ë-w-ah-0
COIN-DUP-FUT-N.SG.AGT-be.right.choice-PUN
it will be the right choice
it will be the right choice,

97 hodigwenyö:h  koh,
hoti-kweny-ö:h
M.PL.PAT-be.able-STA
they are able  and
and they are able,

98 gatgá’hoh  nëtadiyá:’dak  ëgayëdétehö:ni’,
n-ë-t-ha’ti-ya’tak-0  ë-ka-yëtete-hshr-öni’
PART-FUT-M.PL.AGT-use-PUN  FUT-N.SG.AGT-appearance-NOM-make-PUN
anywhere  how they will use it  it will make an appearance
wherever they will use it and it will make an appearance,

99 heh ne:’  do:nöööëdzo:nih  na:shagotiyá’dage:ha’,
te-hon-atöhwëtsoni-h  n-aa-shakoti-ya’takenh-a’
how  it is  they want it  that they might help them
they want to help them,

100 jë:gwah  sö:ga:’  jóiwadi:yö:n,
t-yo-ríhw-a-tiyót-0
CIS-N.SG.PAT-topic-LK-stretch-STA
if  someone  in distress
if someone is in distress,
101 da:h ne’hoh niyó:we’
ni-yo-re-
PART-N.SG.PAT-so.far-STA
so there how far it is
so at this point

102 nê:geh nígí:wayëde:ih
ni-k-rihw-a-yëter-ih
PART-1.SG.AGT-topic-LK-know.about-STA
this what I know about it
this is what I know about the matter.

neh niyóiwá’geh.
ni-yo-rihw-a-’keh
PART-N.SG.PAT-topic-EXT.LOC
namely in the matter
Text 4. The Senecas and the Gahkwas
Told by Roy Jimerson
Recorded on the Cattaraugus Reservation, June 1956

1 Ėgátšonyá:nö:',
ě-ke-hrory-a-hnö-.'
FUT-1.SG.AGT-MID-tell-LK-DIST-PUN
I'll tell about things
I'm going to tell about things,

2 Ėgegeodë' gi'şëh gayasöh,
ě-ke-kar-ot-ě' ka-yas-óh
FUT-1.SG.AGT-story-stand-PUN N.SG.AGT-call-STA
I'll tell a story maybe it is called
maybe I'd be said to tell a story,

3 ne' tsænödi:yo' neh, Gá:hgwá'gé:onö'.
tsha'-hën-atriyo'- ka-rahkw-a'ke-hronö'
COIN-M.PL.AGT-fight-PUN N.SG.AGT-sun-EXT.LOC-PUN
it is namely the Gahkwas.
when they fought, the Gahkwas.

4 Gá:hgwá'gé:ö' hadinögek,
ka-rahkw-a'ke-kéha' hati-nakre-hk
N.SG.AGT-sun-LK-EXT.LOC-DEC M.SG.AGT-dwell-STA.PAST
Gá:hgwá'gé:ö' they lived
They lived at Gá:hgwá'gé:ö',

5 da:h dosgëh niadinö:gek neh Onödowá'ga':
ni-hati-nakre-hk o-nöt-owa'-ka'
PART-M.PL.AGT-dwell-STA.PAST N.SG.PAT-hill-big-CHAR
so near where they lived namely the Senecas
and the Senecas lived nearby.

6 Da:h o:nëh dih ná:h, so then (topic shift) (emphasis)
so thän (emphasis)
So then,

7 waödiyá'dye:ih dé:nötë:ni' ha'de:yö:h,
wa'-hoti-ya'tayeri-h te-hën-atkënë'- ha'te-yö-ó-h
FAC-M.PL.PAT-gather-PUN Düp-M.PL.AGT-compete-PUN TRANS-DUP-N.SG.AGT-many-STA
they gathered they will compete many things
they gathered to compete in many different things,

8 ga:nyo' gwá:h na'ot nê:ge:h neh, gatgá:nye'shâ'.
ka-tkahnye'-shr-á' N.SG.AGT-play-NOM-NSF
when but that.kind these namely games
when there were these, games.
9. **Dewá’ä:o’**
   gye:h,
   te-w-a’ar-r-o-’
   DUP.N.SG.AGT-netting-be.in-DIST-STA
   lacrosse
   *some*
   *One was lacrosse,*

10. **waodiye:ih**
    negë’,
    gëjóhgowa:nëh.
   wa’-hoti-leri-h
   ka-ityohk-owanë-h
   FAC-M.PL.PAT-gather-PUN
   N.SG.AGT-crowd-big-STA
   they gathered
   specifically
   *a big crowd*
   *they gathered, a big crowd.*

11. **Da:h**
    waodiye:ih
    negë’,
    wa’-hoti-leri-h
    FAC-M.PL.PAT-gather-PUN
    they gathered
    specifically
    *So they gathered,*

12. **ha’dexyö:h**
    wáénötgá:nye’.
   ha’-te-y-o-’-h
   wa’-hén-atkahnye-’
   TRANS-DUP-N.SG.PAT-many-STA
   many things
   they played
   *they played all kinds of things.*

13. **Gage:da’,**
    dewá’ä:o’.
   ka-ket-a’
   N.SG.AGT-hoop.and.javelin-NSF
   hoop and javelin
   lacrosse
   *Hoop and javelin, lacrosse*

14. **o’tënë’o’sgwaë**
    koh,
    o’tënöjanë’
    koh.
   o’-t-hën-ëna’skwar-ë’
   o’-t-hën-ayanar-ë’
   FAC-DUP-M.PL.AGT-jump-PUN
   FAC-DUP-M.PL.AGT-run.a.race.PUN
   they jumped
   and
   they ran races
   and
   *and jumping, and foot races.*

15. **Da:h**
    ne:’
    ne:’
    nö’gë:’;
    so
    it
    is
    namely
    last
    *So the last thing,*

16. **o’ók**
    neh,
    o’tšadaje:nö:’.
   wa’-yo-hrahk-0
   FAC-N.SG.PAT-come.last-PUN
   it came last
   *namely*
   *they wrestled*
   *it came last, the wrestling*

17. **Gá:hgwä’gé:onö’,**
    Onödowä’ga:’.
   ka-rahkw-a’ke-hronö’
   o-nöt-owa’-ka’
   N.SG.AGT-sun-EXT.LOC-POP
   N.SG.PAT-hill-big-CHAR
   the Gahkwas
   *The Gahkwas, the Senecas.*
18 O'tgado:gëh ne’ neh agwas në:gë:h ne’ neh,  
o’-t-ka-tokëh-0  
FAC-DUP-N.SG.AGT-be.even-PUN  
it was evenly matched  
*it is*  
*namely*  
*very*  
*this*  
*namely*  
*It was very evenly matched,*

19 do:gwah nö'gáisda:’e:k,  
n-a’-ka-rist-a-’ek-0  
PART-FAC-N.SG.AGT-metal-LK-strike-PUN  
so many  
*how many*  
*hours*  
*after several hours,*

20 ne’ waih negë’ waöwogaïda:t  
wa’-hōwa-ka-rist-a-t-0  
FAC-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-metal-LK-strike-PUN  
*it is*  
*indeed*  
*specifically*  
*they got the best of them*  
*they got the best of them*  

21 neh Gá:hgwa’gé:onö’.  
ka-rahkw-a’-ke-hronö’  
N.SG.AGT-sun-EXT.LOC-POP  
*namely*  
*the Gahkwas*  
*the Gahkwas.*

22 Dzok o:nëh nä:h waodinö’kwëh  
wa’-hoti-na’-khwëh-0  
FAC-N.PL.PAT-angered-PUN  
*well then*  
*(emphasis)*  
*they became angry*  
*Well then they became angry*

23 neh Gá:hgwa’gé:onö’.  
ka-rahkw-a’-ke-hronö’  
N.SG.AGT-sun-EXT.LOC-POP  
*namely*  
*the Gahkwas*  
*the Gahkwas.*

24 wa:ëni’ dëjóhdago’.  
wa’-hën-i’ t-ë-t-yo-ahtako-’  
DUP-FUT-CIS-N.SG.PAT-try.again-PUN  
*they said*  
*it will be tried again*  
*They said ‘Let it be repeated.’*

25 Agwas dógë:o’ nëya:wëh në:gë:h,  
n-ë-yaw-ëh-0  
PART-FUT-N.SG.PAT-happen-PUN  
*very*  
*the real thing*  
*it will happen*  
*this*  
*It will happen the right way,*
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

26 wá'ěně:níšò:ni' koh nà:h
  wa'ě-hén-ěnihsr-òni'-
  FAC-M.PL.AGT-day-make-PUN
they set a date and (emphasis)
and they set a date

27 ēdːiːswé' o:nēh ae', děsgadoːgēh.
  ē-ti-swa-e'-
  FUT-REP.2.PL.AGT-come-PUN
t-ē-s-ka-tokēh-0
  DUP-FUT-REP.N.SG.AGT-be.even-PUN
you will come again then again it will be evenly matched again
when you will come and it will be evenly matched again.

28 Daːh neː' gwaː:h negē' neh gaːnyo',
  so it is but specifically namely when
So when it is,

29 děːyadaje:nōː',
  t-ē-hy-ąt-at-ènōː'-
  DUP-FUT-M.DU.AGT-REFL-grab-PUN
they will wrestle
they will wrestle,

30 sóːdiːgwaːh naː'ot neh ōːgweh čōwōgaidaːt,
  čō-hőwa-ka-rít-a-t
  FUT-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-slant-LK-CAUS
whoever what kind namely person
whoever gets the best of him,

31 čōwōhdaːis,
  čō-hőwa-heit-a'įst-0
  FUT-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-ground-pierce-PUN
he will put him on the ground
and throws him to the ground,

32 čōwōnyo' čōwōnőːen.
  čō-hőwa-ryo'-
  FUT-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-kill-PUN
  čō-hőwa-nōhweht-0
  FUT-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-bash.head-PUN
they'll bash his head in
he'll kill him, he'll bash his head in.

33 Daːh neː' hiːgēːh neh,
  so it is this namely
So this,

34 waːeni' něːgēːh waːdːiːwis'a' 
  wa'ě-hèn-i'-
  FAC-M.PL.AGT-say-PUN
  wa'ě-hat-i-rihw-ihsaː'-
  FAC-M.PL.AGT-plan-finish-PUN
they said these they finalized it
they said they completed their plans,
35  **neh**  Gá:hgwa’gé:onö’.  
   ka-rahkw-a’ke-hronö’  
   N.SG.AGT-sun-EXT.LOC-POP  
   namely the Gahkwas  
   the Gahkwas.

36  **Dzok o:nëh nä:h,**  
   well then (emphasis)  
   Well then,

37  **waënódéhšönyá:nö:’**  
   **ha’de:yö:h**  
   **negë’**  
   **neh,**  
   they got things ready  
   **ha’-te-y-ö:-h**  
   TRANS-DUP-N.SG.AGT-many-STA  
   **negë’**  
   **neh,**  
   **hem,**  
   namely many things  
   that is namely  
   they got many things ready,

38  **o’tënošë:nyë:’**  
   **nö:h**  
   **gayasö:h**  
   **neh,**  
   they trained  
   I guess  
   it’s called  
   namely  
   **kasö:’**  
   **negë’**  
   **neh,**  
   **ha’-y-ö:-h**  
   TRANS-DUP-N.SG.AGT-many-STA  
   **negë’**  
   **neh,**  
   **hem,**  
   they trained I guess it was called,

39  **ga:nyö’**  
   **gë:s**  
   **na’ot**  
   **negë’**  
   **hayë:öh,**  
   **ha-wyë-h-öh**  
   M.SG.AGT-know.how-STA  
   when repeatedly  
   what kind specifically  
   he knew how  
   whatever he knew how to do,

40  **waënódéhšönyá:nö:’**  
   **wa’-hënstheir
domination among themselves

43  **honö:õh’**  
   **shö:h**  
   **o’tënošë:nyë:’**  
   **hon-õhwa’**  
   **o’-te-y-ö:-h**  
   FAC-DUP-M.PL.AGT-REFL-grab-PUN  
   they wrestled  
   **honö:õh’**  
   **shö:h**  
   **o’tënošë:nyë:’**  
   **hon-õhwa’**  
   **o’-te-y-ö:-h**  
   FAC-DUP-M.PL.AGT-REFL-grab-PUN  
   they wrestled  
   **honö:õh’**  
   **shö:h**  
   **o’tënošë:nyë:’**  
   **hon-õhwa’**  
   **o’-te-y-ö:-h**  
   FAC-DUP-M.PL.AGT-REFL-grab-PUN  
   they wrestled  
   **honö:õh’**  
   **shö:h**  
   **o’tënošë:nyë:’**  
   **hon-õhwa’**  
   **o’-te-y-ö:-h**  
   FAC-DUP-M.PL.AGT-REFL-grab-PUN  
   they wrestled  
   they just wrestled among themselves
44 da:h ne’ waöwöyá’dä:go’,
wa’-höwa-ya’t-rako’-
FAC-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-body-choose-PUN
so it is they chose him
so they picked him out,

45 ne’ nagwas o:nëh dö:nö’go:was.
te’-ho-na’kor-ahs
NEG-M.SG.PAT-be.vulnerable-HAB
it is very then he’s invulnerable
the one who was the most competent.

46 Ne’ dëödaje:nö’:.
t-ë-hat-at-yenö:-’
DUP-FUT-M.SG.AGT-REFL-grab-PUN
it is he will wrestle
He would wrestle.

47 Da:h ne’ nä:h ho’gá:e’
në:gë:h,
h-o’-ka-hew-’
TRANS-FAC-N.SG.AGT-time.come-PUN
so it is (emphasis) the time came this
So the time came,

48 wáëñötgá:nye’ da:h,
wa’-hën-atkahnye:-’
FAC-M.PL.AGT-play-PUN
they played so
they played and so,

49 gwas shö:h nösayawëh,
n-ö-s-a-yaw-ëh-0
PART-FAC-REP-FAC-N.SG.PAT-happen-PUN
very just it happened again
it just happened again,

50 waöwödí’ne:a’,
wa’-höwatì’-néha:-’
FAC-3.AGT/3.NONSG.PAT-beat-PUN
they beat them
they beat them,

51 tga:gon näh na’ot wáëñötgá:nye’,
t-ka-köt-0
CIS-N.SG.AGT-be.necessary-STA
whatever (emphasis) what kind they played
whatever they played,
52  
\text{waöwödi’ne:a’}.  
\text{wa’-höwati-neha:-’}  
\text{FAC-3.AGT/3.NNSG.PAT-beat-PUN}  
\text{they beat them}\hfill \text{they beat them.}

53  
\text{O’tênöjanöë’}  
\text{o’-t-hën-atyanar-ë’}  
\text{FAC-DUP-M.PL.AGT-run.a.race-PUN}  
\text{they ran races}\hfill \text{They ran races}

54  
\text{ae’ né:wa’ koh wå:tgwe:ni’}.  
\text{wa’-ha-atkweni-’}  
\text{FAC-M.SG.AGT-win-PUN}  
\text{again this time and he won}\hfill \text{and he won again this time}.

55  
\text{Gage:da’ koh wå:tgwe:ni’ hâ:’gwah.}  
\text{ka-ket-a’ wa’-ha-atkweni-’ hae’kwah}  
\text{N.SG.AGT-hoop.and.javelin-NSF FACT-M.SG.AGT-win-PUN}  
\text{hoop and javelin and he won also He won in hoop and javelin too.}

56  
\text{O’tênö’sgwä:ë’ koh.}  
\text{o’-t-h-ëna’skwar-ë’}  
\text{FAC-DUP-M.SG.AGT-jump-PUN}  
\text{he jumped and And in jumping.}

57  
\text{Agwas waöwögaida:t neh Gâ:hgwa’gé:onö’}.  
\text{wa’-höwa-karitat-0}  
\text{FAC-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-defeat-PUN}  
\text{N.SG.AGT-sun-EXT.LOC-POP}  
\text{completely they defeated him namely the Gahkwas They completely defeated the Gahkwas.}

58  
\text{Gayótge’ö:je’ honőhgáiës.}  
\text{ka-ya-atkëh-ôh-aye-’}  
\text{N.SG.AGT-N.SG.PAT-increase-STA-PROG-STA PROG-M.PL.PAT-become.annoyed-HAB}  
\text{it was increasing They were getting increasingly annoyed.}

59  
\text{Da:h onëh nö’gë’ o’ôäk}  
\text{wa’-yo-hrahk-0}  
\text{FAC-N.SG.PAT-come.last-PUN}  
\text{so then last it came last So then the last thing}
specifically namely they will wrestle

was the wrestling.

it is namely they live

The ones who lived there

type of wrestling? they are playing (a type of wrestling?).

they prepared it (emphasis) they prepared

they formed a circle they formed a circle in the front,

they stood up

they stood up specifically namely

the chiefs and the warriors.
Da:h nö’gë:’ ne’hoh,
so behind there
So behind them there,

ne’ neh etíno’ëh o’dwadi:da’t.
o’-t-wat-i-da’-t
FAC-DUP-F.PL.AGT-stand-PUN
it is namely our mothers they stood
stood our mothers.

Da:h o:nëh tiga:de’ ae’ shö:h,
thi-ka-te’
CONTR-N.SG.AGT-be.present-STA
so then differently again just
So then again in contrast,

heh nigá:öni:h da:h ne’ neh,
ni-ka-hah-öni:-h
PART-N.SG.AGT-path-make-STA
there how the order was so it is namely
in order were

hënögwe’dä:se’.
hën-ökwe’t-ase’
M.PL.AGT-person-young-STA
the young people
the young people.

Ogánya’shádegéshë’ ne’ gë:s höwödi:ya:s.
o-karya’shr-a-tek-ë-shö’
N.SG.PAT-knife-LK-burn-STA-NDIST
burnt knives it is repeatedly they call them
Burnt Knives is what they called them.

Dzok o:nëh ae’ o’tśadaje:nö:’ në:gë:h,
o’-t-hy-atat-yenö’-t’
FAC-DUP-M.DU.AGT-REFL-grab-PUN
well then again they wrestled these
Well then again they wrestled,

honôdehsá’öh koh negë’ neh,
hon-atehsa’-öh
M.PL.PAT-be.ready-STA
they are ready and specifically namely
and they were ready,

čëwônöën ga:nyo’ čëwöyá’je:nën.
čë-höwa-nöheht-0 čë-höwa-ya’-yenëht-0
FUT-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-crush.head-PUN FUT-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-body-make.fall-PUN
they will crush his head when they will put him down
to bash in his head when they put him down.
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

78 O’tšadaje:nö:’ nē:ɡē:h, o’-t-hy-atat-yenö:-’
FAC-DUP-M.DU.AGT-REFL-grab-PUN
they wrestled these
They wrestled,

79 o:h o’yōnishe’t gyō’ōh do:nōdaje:nö:h.
o’-y-ōnishe’-t te-hon-atat-yenö:-h
FAC-N.SG.AGT-become.long.time-PUN DUPS.M.PL.PAT-REFL-grab-STA
oh it became a long time hearsay they’re wrestling
oh, they were wrestling for a long time.

wa’-hōwa-karitat-0 namely ka-rahkwa-a-’ke-hronö’
finally just they got the best of him namely the Gahkwa
Finally they got the best of the Gahkwa.

81 Waōwōéhda’is, hō:ɡweh, wa’-hōwa-heat-a’-ihst-0 h-ōkwe-h
FAC-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-ground-pierce-PUN M.SG.AGT-person-STA
they threw him on the ground man
They threw a man on the ground,

82 waōwōdiya’dágeha’ negē’ neh, waōwōnö:én.
wa’-hōwati-ya’takenh-a’ wa’-hōwa-nōhwēht-0
they helped them specifically namely they crushed his head
they helped them to bash his head in.

83 O’tōwōnōhaga:’, o’-t-hōwa-nōnhaka:-’
FAC-DUP-3.AGT/3.SG.PAT-spread.out-PUN
they spread him out
they spread him out,

84 ahsōh shōh de’shötɡēh nā:h, te’-s-ho-atkēh-ōh
NEG-REP-M.SG.PAT-get.up-STA
still just (emphasis)
he still hadn’t gotten up,

85 waōwōye:nō:’, čōwōewat o:nēh.
wa’-hōwa-yenö:-’ ē-hōwa-hewaht-0
FAC-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-grab-PUN FUT-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-punish-PUN
they grabbed him they will punish him then
they grabbed him to punish him then.
Gagánya’shá’  waë’,
ka-karya’shr-a’  wa’-ha-r-ë’
N.SG.AGT-knife-NSF  FAC-M.SG.AGT-put.in-PUN
knife  he put it in it

He put a knife in it.

negë’  neh  ado:ge’  ha:a’.
ha-haw-’
M.SG.AGT-be.holding-STA

specifically namely ax  he’s holding it

he’s holding an ax.

Waowönó’honya’k  gyö’öh.
wa’-höwa-nö’nöh-ya’k-0
FAC-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-head-cut-PUN
they cut off’ his head  hearsay

They cut off his head.

Waowönó’honya’k
në:ge’h  dzok  o:nëh  nä:h  hi:ge:h,
wöwoh-öw-ahket-0
FAC-3.AGT/M.SG.PAT-head-cut-PUN
they cut off’ his head
this well then (emphasis) that

They cut off his head and then,

he’tgeh  waonödi’.
wa’-hon-ati-’
FAC-M.PL.PAT-throw-PUN
up above they threw it

they threw it in the air.

Ga:nyo’  ho’wáhe:t  negë’  neh,
h-o’-w-ahket-0
TRANS-FAC-N.SG.AGT-go.and.return-PUN
when it went there specifically namely

When it went there,

he’tgeh  ho’wáhe:t  nä:h  waonödi’.
h-o’-w-ahket-0
TRANS-FAC-N.SG.AGT-go.and.return-PUN
up above it went there (emphasis) they threw it

they threw it up in the air.

Yöéda’geh  hösagayë:da’t,
y-öhwëts-ak’eh  h-ö-s-ka-ëya’t-
N.SG.AGT-earth-EXT.LOC  TRANS-FAC-REP-FAC-N.SG.AGT-land-PUN
on the earth it landed again

It landed back on the earth.
210

94 ga:nyo' yōéđza'geh hōsagayē:da’t, when on the earth it landed back on the earth,
y-ōhwēts-a'keh h-ō-s-a-ka-yēt'a'-t N.SG.AGT-earth-EXT.LOC TRANS-FAC-REP-FAC-N.SG.AGT-land-PUN
when landed back

95 o:nēh ae' daēnōjā'dō:di' negē' neh, then again they jumped in specifically namely
NEG-N.SG.AGT-TRANS FAC-M.PL.AGT-MID-body-throw-PUN
they jumped in

96 Gā:hgwa'gé:onō'. ka-rahw-a'ke-hronō' the Gahkwas
N.SG.AGT-sun-EXT.LOC-POP

97 Honōdehsá'ō:ōje' nā:h neh, they are getting ready (emphasis) namely
hon-atēhşa’-ōh-ayt'e-’ M.PL.PAT-get.ready-STA-PROG-STA
they were getting ready,

98 ga'sgw hsa' hadi:a', they are carrying
ka-'skwih-s-a’ hātih-haw'-’ N.SG.AGT-hatchet-NSF M.SG.PL-carry-STA
hatchet they are carrying

99 da:h o:nēh ae' negē' Onōdowá’ga’; they have good minds (emphasis) they were honest
so then again specifically the Senecas
O-nōt-ow'a-’ka:' N.SG.PAT-hill-big-CHAR

100 hadi’nígō:i:yo:h nā:h they have good minds (emphasis)
hātih-’nīkōh-iyō-’h M.PL.AGT-mind-good-STA
they were honest

101 gwisdē’ dé:ne:h negē' neh, they don’t think specifically namely
te-'hēn-er-h NEG-M.PL.AGT-think-STA
something they didn’t suspect anything

102 ne’hoh nēya:wēh
jigwas,
that it will happen
what was about to happen,

103 da:h dá:di:awi’
neh hēnōdiyōsdahgwa’.
that they aren’t carrying it
so they weren’t carrying weapons.

104 Da:h ne’: o:nēh hadī:a’
hati-haw-
so it is then they’re carrying it
And I guess the Gahkwas were carrying them.

105 neh Gá:hgwa’gé:onō’.
ka-rahw-a’ke-hronö’
namely the Gahkwas
the Gahkwas.

106 Waënōdi:yo’
dih nē:geh,
FAC-M.PL.AGT-fight-PUN
they fought
They fought,

107 ga:nyo’ nā:h
nōdā:yā’:dak
when (emphasis)
in which case the Seneca used them,

108 ēōdi:yō’,
ē-ha-atriyo’-
FUT-M.SG.AGT-fight-PUN
he will fight
to fight,

109 da:h waōwōdīga:da:t
gyō’oh nā:h.
so they got the best of them
so they got the best of them.
   ē-hēn-ate’ko-’
   FUT-M.PL.AGT-run.away-PUN
it seems soon just they will run away then
It seems that soon they were going to run away.

111 Da:h o:nēh gyō’ōh o’tödi:et negë’ neh,
o’-t-hoti-her-ht-0
FAC-DUP-M.PL.PAT-yell-PUN
so then hearsay they yelled specifically namely
So then they yelled,

112 hēnōgwe’das:’, Ogānya’shādegēshō’ōh,
hēn-ōkwe’t-ase-’
o-kārya’shr-a-tek-ē-shō’ōh
M.PL.AGT-person-young-STA N.SG.PAT-knife-LK-STA-NDIST
young men burnt knives
the young men, the Burnt Knives,

113 dōdāenē:hda: koh waēnōdi:yo’.
tō-t-a-hēn-er-ht-0 wa’-hēn-atr-iy-o-’
DUP-FAC-CIS-FAC-M.PL.AGT-run-PUN FAC-M.PL.AGT-fight-PUN
they ran back and they fought
and they ran back and fought.

114 Gāohja’ wa:dī:iʼdak.
wa’-hāti-yer-a’t-a-hkw-0
FAC-M.PL.AGT-use-LK-INST-PUN
they used it
They used whips.

115 Da:h o:nēh nā:h bi:ɡë:h,
sō then (emphasis) those
So then they,

116 ga:nyo’ wa:dī:gā’êyō:’ neh,
wa’-hāti-ka’êyō-’
FAC-M.PL.AGT-notice-PUN
when they noticed it namely
when they noticed,

117 hadīgēhjih o:nēh nā:h,
hātī-kēhtsi-h
M.PL.AGT-be.old-STA
the old men then (emphasis)
the old men,

118 ē:nōtgwe:ni’ nō:h,
ē-hēn-atkw-ēni-’
FUT-M.PL.AGT-win-PUN
they will win I guess
they were probably going to win,
119 dödäënö'tšinös hä:'gwah.
t-ö-t-a-hën-atshinöhs-0
DUP-FAC-CIS-FAC-get.tough-PUN
they got tough also
they got tough too.

120 Da'jíuh nā:h shö:h
soon (emphasis) just
*In just a short time*

121 waöwödį'gwat negę' neh,
wa'-hōwati-hē'kwah-0
FAC-3.AGT/3.NONSG.PAT-do.battle.with-PUN
they did battle with them specifically namely
they did battle with them,

122 Gá:hwa'gé:onö'.
ka-rahkw-a'ke-hronö'
N.SG.AGT-sun-EXT.LOC-POP
the Gahkwas
*the Gahkwas.*

123 A:yē' honōtga'de' nō:h nā:h
hon-akā' te'-
M.PL.PAT-a.lot-STA
it seems a lot of them I guess (emphasis)
*It seems a lot of them I guess*

124 neh waöwödį:nyö'.
wa'-hōwati-ryo'-
FAC-3.AGT/3.NONSG.PAT-kill-PUN
namely they killed them
*they killed them.*

125 Waęñōdę'go' koh a:yē' wahōnōnyą:nö':
wa'-hēn-ate'ko'-
FAC-M.PL.AGT-run.away-PUN
they ran away and it seems they were scattered
*They ran away and it seems they were scattered.*

126 Dzok o:nēh saęñōhę:dį'
Nōdową'ga':
well then they went back
*Well then the Senecas went back to where they lived.*

127 Dō:šo:wē:h nō:h.
tehohshowē:h
(analysis uncertain
Buffalo I guess
*Buffalo I guess.*

h-ö-s-a-hati-yò:'
TRANS-FAC-REP-FAC-M.PL.AGT-arrive-PUN
they arrived back there

They arrived back there and held a council.

129 Da:ñ ne' négë' hi:gë:h,

so it is specifically that

So it was,

130 waodi:wanâ:go' waodiyànö:wëh

wa'-hoti-rihwanehrako-
FAC-M.PL.PAT-be.surprised-PUN
they were surprised

they were surprised at the path they took

131 neh Gá:hgwa'gé:onö'.

ka-rahw-á'ke-htonö'
N.SG.AGT-sun-EXT.LOC-POP
namely the Gahkwas
the Gahkwas.

132 Nä:h gyö'oh wa:ëni',

wa'-hën-i-
FAC-M.PL.AGT-say-PUN
They said,

They said,

133 ëdwadi:yo' nà:h ha'degagö:n

ë-tw-atriyo-
FUT-IN.PL.AGT-fight-PUN
we will fight

we'll have to fight

134 heh nö'ö:wëh.

n-a'-yaw-ëh-0
PART-FAC-N.SG.PAT-happen-PUN
when what happened

after what happened.

135 Ëyétinönya:nì'.

ë-yethi-nönyañì-
FUT-IN.NONSG.AGT3.PAT-frighten.off-PUN
we’ll scare them off

We’ll scare them off.

136 Dzok on:nèh nà:h gyö'oh

well then (emphasis) (hearsay)

Well then

137 waënödéhönya:nö:' nè:gë:h,

wa'-hën-atethënhöny-a-hnö:-'
FAC-M.PL.AGT-prepared-LK-DIS-PUN
they prepared things

they got things ready,
138 ē:nōhdē:di' negē' neh, ē:nōdiyoshā'.
FUT-M.PL.AGT-go-PUN specifically they will go and fight
FUT-M.PL.AGT-fight-and-PUN they would go and fight.

139 Gwas gējōhgwe:göh wāénōhdē:di'.
ka-ityohkw-a-kwek-ōh very big crowd
N.SG.AGT-crowd-LK-all-STA FAC-M.PL.AGT-go-PUN they went
Gwas gëjóhgwagwe:göh wā:nāhrë'.
në:n d yosh '.
FUT-M.PL.AGT-go-PUN specifically they will go and fight
they would go and fight.

A whole crowd went.

140 Negē' neh ga:ōwō' wā:di:a'.
ka-hōw-a' wa'-hati-haw-' N.SG.AGT-boat-NSF FAC-M.PL.AGT-carry-PUN they carried it
specifically namely boat
They took a boat.

141 Hadíawi' nē:geh neh, N.SG.PAT-be.able-STA
hati-hawi-'
M.PL.AGT-carry-STA they're carrying it this namely
they’re carrying it this
they were carrying it,

142 ogwe:nyō:h neh ē:nōdi:yo', o-kweny-ō:h namely ē-hēn-atriyo-'
N.SG.PAT-be.able-STA FAC-M.PL.AGT-fight-PUN they will fight
it’s possible namely they will fight
they would be able to fight,

143 jē:gwah dēwōdōēdzoh.
t-ē-w-atōhwētsoh-0
DUP-FUT-N.SG.AGT-be-needed-PUN if
if it will be needed
if it would be needed.

144 Wa:di:yō' nā:h gyō'ōh neh tadinōge', wa'-hati-yō-'
FAC-M.PL.AGT-arrive-PUN arriving (emphasis) (hearsay) namely they live there
they arrived
they will fight
They arrived where they lived,

145 neh Gā:hgwa'gē:onō'.
ka-rahkw-a'ke-hronō'
N.SG.AGT-sun-EXT.LOC-POP namely the Gahkwas
they will fight
the Gahkwas.

A Grammar of the Seneca Language
There was nowhere for them to escape.

Then they held a council and said,

it was impossible

The reason was that,

And it was that

they couldn’t go toward the north,
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

155  
ganyodae'  nä:h   da'á:diät.
ka-nyotare-'   te'-aa-hati-hraht-0
N.SG.AGT-lake-STA   NEG-HYP-M.PL.AGT-pass.by-PUN
lake (emphasis)   they couldn't get past it
they couldn't get past the lake.

156  
Da:h   neh   tgá:hgwé’sgwá:h,
t-ka-rahwkw-ë’s-s-kwa:h
CIS-N.SG.AGT-sun-drop-HAB-TOWARD
so   namely   toward the west
And toward the west,

157  
o:ya’   nä:h   tadinöge:nyö’
o-hy-a’   t-hati-nagre-nyö’-
N.SG.PAT-other-NSF   CIS-M.PL.AGT-dwell-DIST-STA
another (emphasis)   they live
others lived

158  
t-e’-hoti-rilw-iyó:-h
NEG-M.PL.PAT-matter-good-STA
they are hostile
who are hostile.

159  
Ö:daöwödi:nyo’   ne’hógwa:h   hā:ëne’:.
öotahöwatiryo-’   h-aa-hēn-en’-
HYP-CIS-HYP-3.AGT/3.NONSG.PAT-kill-PUN   TRANS-HYP-M.PL.AGT-go-PUN
they would kill them   that way   they might go there
They would kill them if they went that way.

160  
Da:h   ne:’   gyö’öh   waë’
wa’-ha-i’
FAC-M.SG.AGT-say-PUN
so   it is (hearsay)   he said
namely   the chief
So then the chief said,

161  
sga:t   shö:h   onö:ktodt   neh   ë:nödë’go’
o-nakt-ot-0   ë-hēn-ate’ko’-
N.SG.PAT-place-stand.up-STA   FUT-M.PL.AGT-escape-PUN
one   just   place   namely   they will escape
there's just one place for them to escape

162  
gyö’öh   waë’.
wa’-ha-i’
FAC-M.SG.AGT-say-PUN
(hearsay)   he said
he said.
163 Nä:h  neh  Jehgwa’  hë:ne:’.  
   (emphasis) namely (placename) they will go there  
   They will go to Jehgwa’.  

164 Ho’k  o:nëh  waöwödishe:’.  
   wa’-höwati-hshe:-’  
   FAC-3.AGT/3.NONSG.PAT-chase-PUN  
   well then they chased them  
   Well then they chased them.  

165 Gyö’öh  Ohi:yo’  tgehö:de’  në:geh,  
   o-iyh-iyo’  t-ka-iyh-a-te-’  
   N.SG.PAT-river-nice-PROP  CIS-N.SG.AGT-river-LK-in.place-STA  
   (hearsay) Allegany river this  
   On the Allegany River,  

166 gehökdaje’  heone:nö:h.  
   ka-iyh-a-kt-0-atyé-’  he-hon-en-o:h  
   N.SG.AGT-river-LK-next.to-STA-PROG  TRANS-M.PL.PAT-go.somewhere-STA  
   along next to the river  
   they were going along next to the river.  

167 Wá:dihën  ná:h  neh,  
   wa’-hati-rhëht-0  
   FAC-M.PL.AGT-go.all.night-PUN  
   they stayed up all night (emphasis) namely  
   They went all night,  

168 höwëntogáë’  di’gwah  në:noje:’.  
   höwën-atkaharë-’  n-ë-hën-atyer-’  
   3.PL.AGT/3PL.PAT-watch-STA  PART-FUT-M.PL.AGT-do-PUN  
   they’re watching it whatever what they will do  
   they were watching what they would do.  

169 O’gå:š’a:né:gwah  ná:h  
   o’-karah-s’-ah-hne-kwa:h  
   N.SG.PAT-get.dark-HAB-DIM-EXT.LOC-TOWARD  
   toward evening (emphasis)  
   Toward evening  

170 ne’hoh  ná:h  hwa:éne:’  në:geh,  
   h-wa’-hën-en-’  
   TRANS-FAC-M.PL.AGT-go.somewhere-PUN  
   (emphasis) they went there these  
   they went there,
171 wa:dinödayë::

wa’-hati-nät-a-yë:-"
FAC-M.PL.agt-town-LK-set.down-PUN
they made camp
they made camp.

172 neh Gá:hgwa’gé:onö’.

ka-rahkw-a’ke-hronö’
N.SG.AGT-sun-EXT.LOC-POP
namely the Gahkwas
the Gahkwas.

173 Da:h wa:dinödayë:: shö:h há:gwa

wa’-hati-nö:t-a-yë:-"
FAC-M.PL.AGT-town-LK-set.down-PUN
so they made camp just also
So they also made camp

174 neh Nödowá’ga::

nö:t-owa’-’ka:’
hill-big-CHAR
namely the Senecas
the Senecas.

175 A:yë:: nö:gë:h wa’ó’gä:h.

wa’-yo-a’karah-0
FAC-N.SG.PAT-get.dark-PUN
it seems this it got dark
It seems it got dark,

176 wa:diáshë:: dëyëti’nígö:ge:ni’

wa’-hati-hashë:-"
FAC-M.PL.AGT-council-PUN
DUP-FUT-NONSG.AGT/3.PAT-mind-LK-defeat-PUN
they held a council just
we’ll outsmart them
they held a council, "We will just outsmart them."

177 Da:h ne:: nö:h waënijóghö:ni’ nö:gë:h

wa’-hën-i’tyohkw-öni’-
FAC-M.PL.AGT-group-make-PUN
so it is (emphasis) they formed a group those
So they formed a group

178 ga:nyo’ wa’ó’gä:h.

wa’-yo-a’karah-0
FAC-N.SG.PAT-get.dark-PUN
when it got dark
when it got dark.
179 Sëh gyö’öh nigåöwö:ge:h,
ni-ka-höw-a-ke:-h
PART-N.SG.AGT-boat-LK-how-many-STA
three (hearsay) how many boats
Three boats,

180 waënödé’nöhda:ah në:geh,
wa’-hén-ate’nöhtarah-0
FAC-M.PL.AGT-get.in-PUN
they got in these
they got in,

181 waënödi:hën.
wa’-hén-atiyhéht-0
FAC-M.PL.AGT-go.downstream-PUN
they went down the river
they went down the river.

182 Näh waénötwatase’,
wa’-hén-athwatase’-
FAC-M.PL.AGT-go.around-PUN
(emphasis) they went around
They went around,

183 gyö’öh de’we:ëh nä:h dosgëh,
(hearsay) not far (emphasis) near
it wasn't far,

184 heyótwada:se:h dosgëh nä:h neh,
he-yo-athwatase:-h
TRANS-N.SG.PAT-go.around-STA
it went around there near (emphasis) namely
it curved around nearby,

185 nidzoähdöh.
ni-s-yo-hraht-öh
PART-REP-N.SG.PAT-pass.by-STA
it came back again
and came back again.

186 O:nëh nä:h gyö’öh waënödé’nöhda:ah,
wa’-hén-ate’nöhtarah-0
FAC-M.PL.AGT-get.in-PUN
then (emphasis) (hearsay)
Then they got in,

187 söeh negë’ o:nëh,
night specifically now
it was night now,
A Grammar of the Seneca Language

188 ga:nyo’ në:gë:h wa:di:yö’ nä:h
wa’-hati-yö’-
FAC-PL.AGT-arrive-PUN
when these they arrived (emphasis)
when they arrived

189 heh todinöda:yë’,
t-hoti-nat-a-yë’-
CIS-PL.PAT-town-LK-set.down-STA
where they have camped there
where they had camped,

190 o’tódiéhda:nö:’
o’-t-hoti-herelt-a-nö’-
FAC-DUP-PL.PAT-yell-LK-DIST-PUN
they yelled severally (emphasis) repeatedly (emphasis)
they all yelled,

191 wá:diät.
wa’-hati-hraht-0
FAC-PL.AGT-pass.by-PUN
they passed by
as they passed by.

192 Waënötwadase’,
wa’-hën-athwate’-
FAC-PL.AGT-go.around-PUN
they went around
They went around,

193 da:h o:nëh nä:h negë’ neh ga:öwö’,
ka-höw-a’-
N.SG.AGT-boat-SNF
so then (emphasis) specifically namely boat
so then the boats,

194 dödà:dik,
t-ô-t-a-hati-hk-0
DUP-FAC-PL.AGT-pick.up-PUN
they picked them back up
they picked them back up

h-ô-sa-hati-höw-oh-0
TRANS-FAC-REP-FAC-PL.AGT-boat-put.in.water-PUN
toward that way they put them back in the water
they put them back in the water on the other side.
196 Nā:h gyō’ōh nionōje:ēh, ni-hon-ayer-ēh
PART-M.PL.PAT-do-STA
(emphasis) (hearsay) what they did
What they did,

197 ne:' neh o’tádihēn. o’-t-hati-rhēht-0
it is namely they stayed up all night
they stayed up all night.

198 Da:h o:nēh nā:h neh Gá:hgw’a’gé:onō’
N.PL.AGT-sun-LK-EXT.LOC-POP
so then (emphasis) namely the Gahkwas
So then the Gahkwas

199 honōtga’ō’ hodiga’ē:yo’ nā:h
hon-atkarārō’-’ hoti-ka’ēyō’-’
M.PL.PAT-watch-STA M.PL.PAT-notice-STA
they’re watching they’ve noticed (emphasis)
were watching and they noticed

200 we:so’ wá:diät.
wa’-hati-hraith-0
FAC-M.PL.AGT-pass.by-PUN
a lot they passed by
that they passed by many times.

201 Nā:h wá:ēne’ á:hdahgōh nō:h nā:h
wa’-hi-en-er’ o-hraithkw-ōh
FAC-M.PL.AGT-think-PUN N.SG.PAT-surpass-STA
so they thought very much I guess (emphasis)
They thought it was a very

202 gējōhgowa:nēh.
ka-iyo:kw-owanh N.SG.AGT-group-big-STA
big group big group.

203 Da:h o:nēh nā:h,
so then (emphasis)
So then,

204 wa’o:hē’t nā:h gyō’ōh
wa’-yo-rhē’-t
FAC-N.SG.PAT-get.light-PUN
the next day (emphasis) (hearsay)
the next day
205 waënödöšö:k negé’ dà:dišë’.  
wa’-hèn-atöhisisöhk-0 t-aa-hati-hthar-ë’  
FAC-M.PL.AGT-request-PUN DUP-HYP-M.PL.AGT-talk-PUN  
they requested specifically they requested that they would talk.

206 Nä:h wá:dišë’: në:gë:h waënödádatga’.  
wa’-hèn-atöhisisöhk-0 wa’-hèn-atat-atak’-w-’  
FAC-M.PL.AGT-request-PUN FAC-M.PL.AGT-council-PUN  
(emphasis) they held a council those they surrendered  
They held a council and they surrendered.

207 Nä:h da’áöh negé’ áënötgwe:ni’  
aa-hèn-atakweni-’  
FAC-M.PL.AGT-council-PUN HYP-M.PL.AGT-win-PUN  
(emphasis) impossible specifically they might win  
It was impossible for them to win

208 á:hdak honótga’de’ hodáhödöh.  
hon-atak’-te-’ hoti-hraht-öh  
M.PL.PAT-many STA M.PL.PAT-pass.by STA  
too much they are many they are passing by  
with so many passing by.

209 Da:h waënödádatga’,  
wa’-hèn-atat-atak’-w-’  
FAC-M.PL.AGT-refl-let.go-PUN  
so they surrendered  
So they surrendered,

210 wa:ëni’ ga:nyo’ nä:h ëswënöhdö’.  
wa’-hèn-is-’ e-swë-ënöhtö-’  
FAC-M.PL.AGT-say-PUN FUT-2.PL.AGT-know-PUN  
they they said when (emphasis) you will know  
they said it’s time for you to decide

211 nësgwa:ye’.  
në-ë-skwa-ye’-’  
PART-FUT-2.PL.AGT/1.PL.PAT-do-PUN  
what you will do to us  
what you will do to us.

212 Dzok o:nëh nä:h gyö’öh wá:dišë’: në:gë:h,  
wá’-hèn-atöhisisöhk-0 wa’-hèn-atöhisisöhk-0  
FAC-M.PL.AGT-council-PUN FAC-M.PL.AGT-request-PUN  
well then (emphasis) (hearsay) they counciled these  
Well then they held a council,
da:h a:yë:' ã:hdak nö:h heh,
so it seems very much I guess when
so it seemed very much

we:so’ honödiyó:nö’ Nödowá’ga:’,
hon-atriyo-hnö’ nöt-owa-’ka:’
M.PL.PAT-fight-STA.PAST hill-big-CHAR
a lot they had been fighting the Senecas
the Senecas had been fighting a lot,

de’shon gwé’dayë’ nö:h áën di:yo’.
te’-s-hon-ökwe’t-á-yë-’
NEG-REP.M.PL.PAT-person-LK-have-STA
they didn't have people (emphasis) they might fight

Dzok o:nëh nö:h wa:ëni’,
wa’-hën-i’
FAC.M.PL.AGT-say-PUN
well then (emphasis) they said
Well then they said,

eyétiyógwé’dëogo’ shö:h.
ë-yethiy-ökwe’t-a-röko-’
FUT-IN.NONSG.AGT/3.NONSG.PAT-person-LK-collect-PUN
we’ll adopt them just
We’ll just adopt them.

Dowá’ga:’ ë:nödö’.
nö:t-owa-’ka:’ ë-hën-atö-’
hill-big-CHAR FUT-M.PL.AGT-become-PUN
Senecas they will become
They will become Senecas.

Ho’todi:wá’e’he’t në:gë:h
h-o’-t-hoti-rihw-a-hë’e’t
TRANS:FAC-DUP.M.PL.PAT-things-LK-stop-PUN
things stop these
It was the end of things for them

waöwödi:owi’ neh Gá:hgwa’gé:onö’,
wa’-köwati-hröri-’ ka-rahkwa’-a-’ke-hронö’
FAC-3.AGT/3.NONSG.PAT-tell-PUN N.SG.AGT-sun-LK-ext.loc-POP
namely the Gahkwas
they told the Gahkwas,

Nödowá’ga:’ nä:h ë:nödö’.
nö:t-owa-’ka:’ ë-hën-atö-’
hill-big-CHAR FUT-M.PL.AGT-become-PUN
Senecas (emphasis) they will become
they will became Senecas.
What happened to the Gahkwas,

they stood up to surrender.

So then they stood up to surrender.

they were preparing big piles of moccasins.

So that was the custom,

to put shoes on someone,
230 gayó:wa'h,  
ka-yohw-ah  
n.sg.agt-moccasin-nsf  
moccasins  
moccasins

231 ne’ ná:h wá:tsó:wi'h ne'h,  
wa’-ha-athrori-h  
FAC-M.SG.AGT-tell-HAB  
\begin{align*} \text{it is (emphasis)} \end{align*}  
\begin{align*} \text{it tells} \end{align*}  
\begin{align*} \text{namely} \end{align*}  
\begin{align*} \text{it tells,} \end{align*}

232 ūwōyogwe’deogo’.  
ē-hōw-ōke’t-aro’-’  
FUT-3.NONSG.AGT/M.SG.PAT-person-LK-collect-PUN  
they will adopt him  
\begin{align*} \text{they will adopt him.} \end{align*}

233 Ŭtga’  
ē-ha-ata’-’  
FUT-M.SG.AGT-give.up-PUN  
\begin{align*} \text{he’l l give it up (emphasis)} \end{align*}  
\begin{align*} \text{his identity} \end{align*}  
\begin{align*} \text{He’l l give up his identity,} \end{align*}

234 ná:h neh Onódow’a:’  
o-nōt-ow’-’  
N.SG.PAT-hill-big-CHAR  
\begin{align*} \text{(emphasis) namely Seneca} \end{align*}  
\begin{align*} \text{he’l l become a Seneca.} \end{align*}

235 Da:h o:néh nō:di:ye’  
n-a-hati-yer’-’  
PART-FAC-M.PL.AGT-do-PUN  
\begin{align*} \text{so then what they did} \end{align*}  
\begin{align*} \text{those} \end{align*}  
\begin{align*} \text{So then that’s what they did,} \end{align*}

236 ne’hoh ná:h gyö’ōh dōdáowódí:a’.  
t-ō-t-a-hōwati-haw’-’  
DUP-FAC-CIS-FAC-3.AGT/3.NONSG.PAT-bring-PUN  
there (emphasis) (hearsay)  
\begin{align*} \text{they brought them back.} \end{align*}

237 Sa:dí:yő’,  
s-a-hati-yō’-’  
REP-FAC-M.PL.AGT-arrive-PUN  
they got back  
\begin{align*} \text{They got back,} \end{align*}
they became Senecas.

239 Wa:dí:wahdö’ näh negë’ neh,

they forgot (emphasis) specifically namely

They forgot


they say

They said they were Gahkwas.

241 Agwás’ö:weh näh wa:dí:wahdö’,

completely (emphasis) they forgot it

They completely forgot it,

242 ne’hoh oznéh Nódowá’ga’ waënödö’.

that then Senecas they became

then they became Senecas.

243 Tśa:di:yö’ näh,

after they came (emphasis)

After they came,

244 négë:h né:wa’ de’wë:döh da’à:hse:gé’ négë:h neh,

nowadays you don’t ever see it,

245 sō:ga’ á:é’ neh

that someone would say

someone he would say namely
246 Gá:hgwa’gé:onö’ nö’gyá’do’dë’.
ka-rahkw-a-‘ke-hronö’ n-a'-k-ya’t-o’të-'
N.SG.AGT-sun-LK-EXT.LOC-POP PART-FAC-1.SG.AGT-body-so-STA
Gahkwa I was a Gahkwa.

I was that way

twa-nakre-’
IN.PL.AGT-dwell-STA

it’s true (emphasis) this namely together we live

It's true, as we live together,

ni-t-yaw-ë’-öh PART-CIS-N.SG.PAT-happen-STA

long ago this how it has happened

this is what happened long ago.

249 Ne’hoh shö:h në:gë:h né:wa’ honótgaëöyö’,
hon-atkaharö-nyö-’
M.PL.PAT-watch-DIST-STA

that just this now they are watching

Nowadays they are watching,

250 waë’ gë:s ne’ näh,
wa’-h-ë-’
FAC-M.SG.AGT-say-PUN

he says repeatedly it is (emphasis)

He says,

ka-rabw-a-‘ke-hronö’ n-a-hökwe’t-a’
N.SG.AGT-sun-LK-EXT.LOC-POP PART-FAC-person-NSF
Gahkwa this he was a person

he was a Gahkwa.

252 Ahsöh honóshä:’s.
hon-ashara’-s
M.PL.PAT-remember-HAB

still they remember

They still remember.

253 Waöwödíhsëönö:ni’,
wa’-höwati-hsën-a-teni-’
FAC-3.AGT/3.NONSG.PAT-name-LK-change-PUN

they changed their names

They changed their names,
254 tša:nöhdé:ní\textsuperscript{\textprime}  
\textit{tsh-a-hén-ah-teni-'}  
\textit{COIN-FAC-M.PL.AGT-MID-change-PUN}  
after they changed  
after they changed

255 Hadísgwa:s gyö’öh ná:h  
\textit{waöwödi:ya:s.}  
\textit{wa’-höwati-yast-0}  
\textit{FAC-3.AGT/3.NONSG.PAT-call-PUN}  
Hadísgwa:s \textit{(hearsay) (emphasis)}  
they called them Hadísgwa:s.

256 Da:h në:geh në:wa’,  
so this this time  
\textit{So nowadays,}

257 sü:ga:\textquoteleft  
\textit{éodi’sdaë’}  
\textit{eh-at-i’s-t-a-r-e’}  
\textit{FUT-M.SG.AGT-sound-LK-be.in-PUN}  
someone he will speak  
when some old man will speak,

258 sü:ga:\textquoteleft  
wáótšo:wi’,  
\textit{wa’-ho-atheriri-'}  
\textit{FAC-M.SG.PAT-talk.about-PUN}  
someone he talks about him  
he talks about someone,

259 dá:ë’,  
\textit{t-aa-h-ë-'}  
\textit{CIS-HYP-M.SG.AGT-say-PUN}  
he might say  
he might say,

260 ne:\textquoteleft  
\textit{ná:h hi:geh nêh Hasgwâhgehah.}  
\textit{it is (emphasis) that namely Hasgwâhgehah}  
\textit{that one is Hasgwâhgehah \textit{(a man).}}

261 Yesgwâhgehah gi’shêh.  
Yesgwâhgehah maybe  
\textit{Or Yesgwâhgehah \textit{(a woman).}}

262 Da:h o:nëh negë’ ná:h  
\textit{o’gátšonyá:nö’:}  
\textit{o’-k-atheroy-a-hmö-ë’}  
\textit{FAC-1.SG.AGT-tell.about-LK-DIST-PUN}  
so now specifically \textit{(emphasis)}  
I told about things  
\textit{So now I told about things,}
263 wá:tšo:wi' heh, niodiyá'dawé'öh
FAC-M.SG.AGT-tell.about-PUN PART-M.PL.PAT-body-LK-happen-STA
he told about it namely what happened to them
he told about what happened to them

264 neh Gá:hgwa’gé:onö’.
ka-rahkw-a’-ke-hronö’
N.SG.AGT-sun-LK-EXT.LOC-POP
namely the Gahkwas
the Gahkwas.

265 Da:h nehoh.
so that
So that’s it.
REFERENCES


A Grammar of the Seneca Language


Woodbury, Hanni. 1975. *Noun Incorporation in Onondaga*. Ph.D. dissertation, Yale University,